CITROËN

C3 AIRCROSS

Owner's Manual

nothing
moves us
like citroën



WELCOME

Thank you for choosing Citroën C3 AIRCROSS.
This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.
We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Service Booklet.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Owner's Manual** is passed on to the new owner.

OBTAIN THE OWNER'S MANUAL

ONLINE

View or download the Owner's Manual at the following address:
http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/
Scan this QR Code for direct access.
Select:
– the language,
– the vehicle and body style,
– the issue period of the Owner's Manual corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

PRINTED VERSION

Order the Owner's Manual in paper format from a CITROËN dealer.

Welcome 1

Overview 2
Instruments and controls 4
Hybrid system (MHEV) 5
Electric drive system (BEV) 6
Labels 7

Eco-driving 3
Eco-driving 8

Dashboard instruments 4
LCD instrument panel 10
Matrix instrument panel 10
Warning and indicator lights 11
Indicators 18
Configuration menu 21
Trip computer 22
Lighting dimmer 23
Privacy Settings 24
Smartphone Station 24
10-inch touch screen 26
Remotely operable additional functions (BEV) 27

Access 5
Remote control - Key 29
Back-up procedures 30
Doors 33
Boot 33
Central locking 34
Alarm 34
Electric windows 36

Ease of use and comfort 6
Correct driving position 38
Front head restraints 38
Front seats 38
Heated seats 39
Rear head restraints 39
Second row seats 40
Third row seats (7 seater) 41
Steering wheel adjustment 43
Heated steering wheel 43
Mirrors 43
Heating and Ventilation 44
Heating/Manual air conditioning 45
Automatic air conditioning 46
Front demisting/defrosting 48
Rear screen demisting/defrosting 48
Heated windshield 48
Temperature preconditioning (BEV) 49
Courtesy lights 49
Interior fittings 50
Boot fittings 52

Lighting and visibility 7
Exterior lighting control stalk 54
Direction indicators 55
Automatic illumination of lights 56
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting 57
Headlight beam height adjustment 57
Automatic lighting system - General recommendations 57
Automatic headlight dipping 58
Wiper control stalk 59

Safety 8
General safety recommendations 62
Hazard warning lights 62
Horn 63
Pedestrian horn (MHEV or BEV) 63
Emergency or assistance call 63
Event Data Recording system 65
Electronic stability 5 control (ESC) 65
Seat belts 67
Airbags 69
Child seats 71
"ISOFIX" mountings 74
i-Size child seats 75
Recommended child seats 75
Summary table for installation of universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats. 76

Child seat label 78
Manual child lock 79

Driving 9
Driving recommendations 81
Anti-theft protection 83
Starting/Switching off the engine 83
Manual parking brake 85
Electric parking brake 85
6-speed manual gearbox 87
Automatic gearbox (EAT6) 88
Electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6) 90
Drive selector (BEV) 93
Progressive Hydraulic Cushions 94
Gear shift indicator 94
Hill start assist 94
Stop & Start (ICE) 95
e-Auto mode (MHEV) 96
Tire under-inflation detection 97
Driving and maneuvering aids - General recommendations 98
Road signs recognition 100
Overspeed alert 102
Speed limiter 102
Cruise control - Specific recommendations 103
Cruise control 104
Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance 105
Distraction detection 109
Lane departure warning 111
Lane keeping assist 111
Blind spot monitoring 114
Parking sensors 116
Reversing camera 117

Practical information 10
Compatibility of fuels 119
Refueling 119

Electrified vehicles - General recommendations 120
Hybrid system (MHEV) 121
Charging system (BEV) 122
Charging the traction battery (BEV) 131
Snow chains 135
Towing device 135
Roof bars 136
Energy economy mode 136
Load reduction mode 137
Hood 137
Checking levels 138
Checks 140
Free-wheeling 142
Advice on care and maintenance 143

In the event of a breakdown 11
Warning triangle 145
Tool kit 145
Temporary puncture repair kit 146
Spare wheel 148
Changing a bulb 152
Fuses 156
12 V battery / Accessory battery 156
Towing the vehicle 162

Technical data 12
Engine technical data and towed loads 166
Engines and towed loads - ICE 167
Engines and towed loads - MHEV 168
Engines and towed loads - BEV 169
Dimensions (mm) 170
Identification markings 170

Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen - 10" Central Touchscreen 13
Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen - 10" Central Touchscreen 171
First steps 171
Steering-mounted controls 172
Voice commands 172
Applications 173
Radio 174
Media 175
Phone 176
Connected Services 178
Connectivity 178
Mirror Screen® 180
Navigation 182
Settings 183

Vehicle data recording and privacy 14
Introduction 185
Operating data in the vehicle 185
Technical data of the vehicle 185
Comfort and infotainment functions 186
Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple®CarPlay®) 187
Online services - "Over-The- Air" connectivity 187
Online services based on contractual agreements 187
Protecting measures against cyber-attacks 188
Applying legal obligations and respective requirements 188
Data use - product quality improvement 189
European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis 189
Declaration of conformity 190

Warning
For any work on your vehicle, contact a qualified workshop that has the required technical information, skills and equipment, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.



Safety warning



Additional information



Environmental protection feature



Left-hand drive vehicle

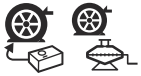


Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of the equipment / button described using a black area.

Access to additional videos



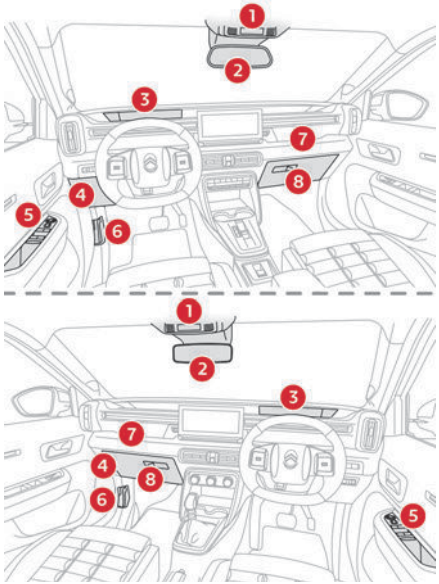


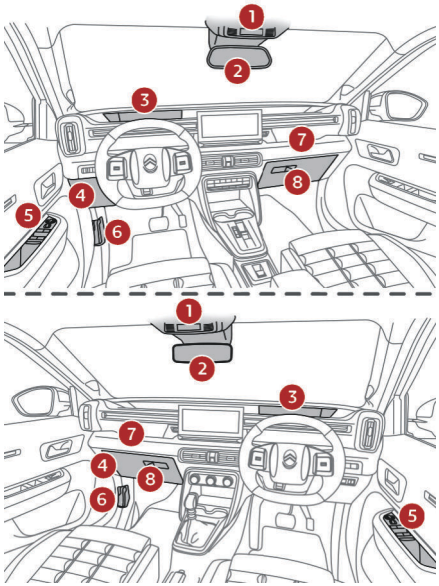


https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

Instruments and controls

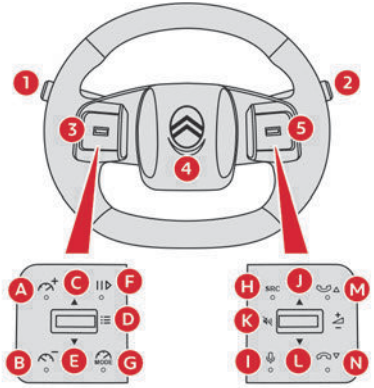
These illustrations and descriptions are intended as a guide. The presence and location of certain elements may vary, depending on the version or trim level.





1. Courtesy light/Front reading lights Emergency and assistance call buttons Warning lights display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
2. Interior rear view mirror
3. Instrument panel
4. Fusebox
5. Electric windows Electric door mirrors
6. Hood release
7. Front passenger airbag
8. Glove box

Steering-mounted controls



1. External lighting controls/Direction indicators
2. Wiper controls/Windshield Washer/Trip computer
3. Speed limiter/Cruise control/Menus and settings

A. Increase the speed setting Activate the Speed limiter or Cruise control

B. Decrease the speed setting Activate the Speed limiter or Cruise control

C. Up: navigation through the menus of the instrument panel/settings

D. Validate the selection in the menus of the instrument panel/settings

E. Down: navigation through the menus of the instrument panel/settings

F. Pause/Reactivate the Speed limiter or Cruise control with the speed setting saved

G. Select/Deselect the Speed limiter Select/ Deselect the Cruise control

4. Horn

5. Audio system setting controls and phone

H. Select an audio source

I. Voice commands

J. Increase the volume

K. Mute the volume

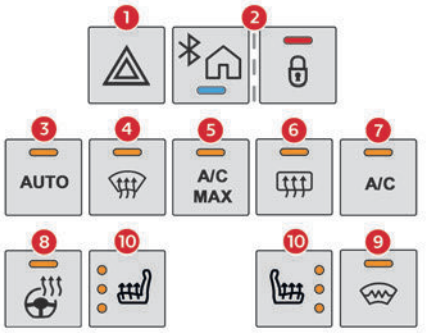
L. Decrease the volume

M. Short press: change to next stored radio station/change to next song/accept an incoming call

N. Short press: change to previous stored radio station/change to previous song/ reject a call

Central controls (with automatic air conditioning)





1. Hazard warning lights

2. Bluetooth® connection and access to the smartphone (with Smartphone Station) or Central locking (with touch screen)

3. Automatic air conditioning

4. Front demisting/defrosting

5. Maximum air conditioning

6. Rear screen demisting/defrosting

7. Air conditioning

8. Heated steering wheel

9. Heated windscreen

10. Heated seats

Side controls





1. Headlights beam height adjustment

2. Press and hold: deactivation of the speed limit information audible warning

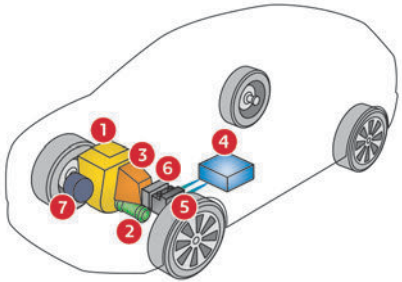
3. Lane keeping assist

4. Stop & Start (ICE)/e-Auto mode (MHEV)

5. Central locking (with Smartphone Station)

6. Alarm (depending on equipment)

Hybrid system (MHEV)



1. Petrol engine

2. Electric motor

3. 6-speed electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6)
4. 48 V traction battery
5. 12 V accessory battery
6. DC/DC converter
7. Belt starter

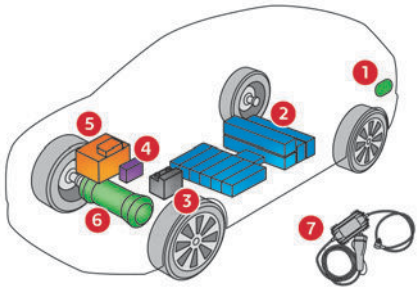
The 48 V hybrid technology requires no connection to charge the traction battery.

The **Hybrid system** does not operate continuously, but is activated according to the state of the vehicle, the state of charge of the traction battery, the thermal comfort of the passenger compartment (switching on the heating or air conditioning), the driving conditions (acceleration, deceleration, braking, engine start-up) and the road conditions (uphill, downhill):

- The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
- In normal driving, the petrol engine and electric motor work together or separately to optimize fuel consumption and electrical energy or to charge the traction battery.
- During the acceleration phases, the electric motor provides an additional boost to reach the torque needed as fast as possible and to improve the acceleration at low speed.
- During the deceleration phases, the electric motor charges the traction battery, using the inertia of the vehicle.
- The driving in all-electric is possible for parking maneuvering, for 20 mph (30 km/h) speed zones in city, on urban and country roads with smooth driving and on motorways in slight deceleration or downhill.

The electric motor is integrated into the automatic gearbox.
The DC/DC converter provides the link between the 12 V accessory power supply and the 48 V traction power supply.
The belt starter restarts the petrol engine after driving in all-electric.

Electric drive system (BEV)



1. Charging connectors
2. Traction battery
3. Accessory battery
4. Heat pump
5. On-board charger
6. Electric motor
7. Charging cable

The charging connectors **(1)** enable 3 types of charging:

- Domestic charging in mode 2 using a domestic socket and associated charging cable **(7)**.
- Accelerated charging in mode 3 using an accelerated charging unit (**Wallbox**).
- Superfast charging in mode 4 using a fast public charger.

The 400 V traction battery **(2)** uses Lithium-Ion technology. It stores and supplies the energy required for the operation of the electric motor, air conditioning and heating. Its charge level is represented by an indicator and a reserve power warning light on the instrument panel.
The 12 V accessory battery **(3)** powers the vehicle's conventional electrical system. It is recharged automatically by the traction battery via the on-board charger.
The heat pump **(4)** provides passenger compartment heating and regulates traction battery and on-board charger cooling.
The on-board charger **(5)** manages the domestic charging (mode 2) and accelerated charging (mode 3) of the traction battery as well as the recharging of the 12 V accessory battery.
The electric motor **(6)** provides propulsion in accordance with the selected driving mode and driving conditions. It recovers energy during vehicle braking and deceleration phases.

Labels

"Ease of use and comfort - Rear bench seat - Rear head restraints" section:



"Ease of use and comfort - Front fittings - Wireless smartphone charger" section:



"Lighting and visibility - Exterior lighting control stalk" and "In the event of a breakdown - Changing a bulb" sections:



"Safety - General safety recommendations - Installing electrical accessories" section:



"Safety - Child seats - Deactivating the front passenger airbag" section":





"Safety - ISOFIX mountings" section:



"Driving - Electric parking brake" section:



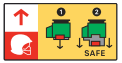
"Driving - Stop & Start" section:



"Practical information - Compatibility of fuels" section:



"Practical information - Charging system (BEV)" section:









"Practical information - Charging the traction battery (BEV)" section:



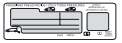
"Practical information - Hood" section:



"Practical information - Checking levels - Engine coolant" section:



"In the event of a breakdown - Temporary puncture repair kit" section:





"In the event of a breakdown - Spare wheel" section:



"In the event of a breakdown - 12 V battery/ Accessory battery" section:



Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimize the vehicle's energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO_2 emissions.

Optimize your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.
With an automatic gearbox, prefer using the automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO_2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
With a hybrid engine, engine braking is more efficient. Anticipate slowing down as much as you can and, if possible, prefer a deceleration with engine braking in order to charge the traction battery, to increase all-electric driving and to reduce fuel consumption.
When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

Control the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (e.g. sunroof blind, window blinds).
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.
Adapt your use of the headlights and/or foglights to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country in which you are driving.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the boot as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimize wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tires and refit summer tires.

Comply with the servicing instructions

Check trey pressures regularly, with the tires cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey.
- at each change of season.
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tires on your trailer or caravan.
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometers).

Optimizing the driving range of electrified vehicles

The vehicle's consumption of electrical energy greatly depends on the route profile, speed and driving style, as well as the use of the heating/air conditioning.
Prefer the **ECO** and **CHARGE** zones of the power indicator by driving smoothly and at a steady speed.

Hybrid vehicles (MHEV)

Maximize the vehicle's inertia by releasing the accelerator pedal so that the vehicle slows down by itself (e.g. when driving downhill or approaching a traffic light).
When the accelerator pedal is released, provided that the slider on the power indicator in the instrument panel is still moving in the **CHARGE** zone, energy recovery is optimal.
Energy recovery makes it possible to make efficient use of the "passive" phases of driving (deceleration).
The recovered energy is used to recharge the traction battery and is then used for all-electric driving or further acceleration.
When the traction battery is almost full, the energy recovery is gradually reduced.

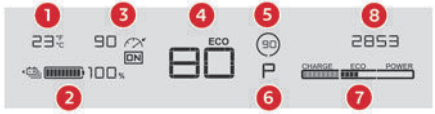
Electric vehicles (BEV)

Program a destination into the vehicle's GPS navigation system to optimize consumption during a journey.
Anticipate the need to slow down, and brake smoothly, whenever possible using engine braking with the regenerative braking function, which will move the power indicator into the "**CHARGE**" zone.
Use the air conditioning rather than the heating to demist the passenger compartment.

LCD instrument panel



ICE



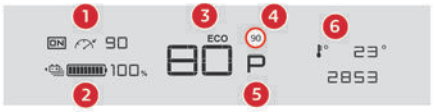
BEV

1. Outside temperature (°C or °F)
2. Fuel gauge (ICE) Charge level indicator (BEV)
3. Cruise control/Speed limiter settings
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
5. Display of speed limit signs
6. Gear shift indicator (arrow and recommended gear) (ICE) Selector position and gear on automatic gearbox (ICE) Drive selector position (BEV)
7. Coolant temperature indicator (°C) (ICE) Power indicator (BEV)
8. Total distance recorder (miles or km) Remaining range (miles or km) Current consumption (ICE) Percentage of the current journey traveled in all-electric driving mode (BEV)

Matrix instrument panel



ICE /MHEV



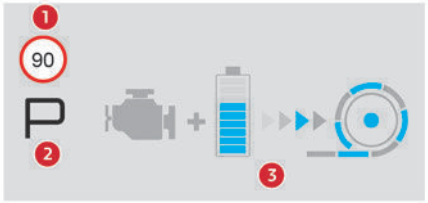
BEV

1. Cruise control/Speed limiter settings
2. Fuel gauge (ICE or MHEV) Charge level indicator (BEV)
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
4. Display of speed limit signs
5. Gear shift indicator (arrow and recommended gear) Selector position and gear on automatic gearbox (ICE or MHEV) Drive selector position (BEV)
6. Matrix display

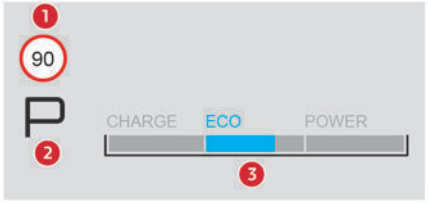
Display screen



ICE or MHEV



MHEV



MHEV or BEV

1. Display of speed limit signs
2. Gear shift indicator (arrow and recommended gear) Selector position and

gear on automatic gearbox (ICE or MHEV)
Drive selector position (BEV)

3. Display area:
   - Outside temperature (°C or °F).
   - Total distance recorder (miles or km).
   - Trip A or B with time and distance traveled (miles or km).
   - Remaining range (miles or km).
   - Current consumption (mpg or l/100km).
   - Power indicator (MHEV or BEV).
   - Energy flow (MHEV).
   - Warning and status messages.

Warning and indicator lights

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lights inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lights) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lights). Certain lights light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colors.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a light may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each indicator light for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lights come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lights should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning lights

If a red or orange warning light comes on, there may be fault that needs further investigation.

If a light remains illuminated

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator light description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

(1): **You must stop the vehicle.**

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lights

Red warning/indicator lights

STOP



Fixed, associated with another warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Traction battery overheating (MHEV or BEV)



Fixed, combined with the STOP warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The traction battery's temperature is too high.
Carry out (1).

Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.

Carry out (2).

Traction battery malfunction (MHEV or BEV)



Fixed, combined with the Service warning light, accompanied by the display of a message.

The traction battery has a fault.

Carry out (2).

Maximum coolant temperature



Fixed.
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.
Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Engine oil pressure (ICE or MHEV)



Fixed.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

System malfunction (MHEV or BEV)



Fixed.
A fault has been detected in the system (electric motor or traction battery).
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Cable connected (BEV)



Fixed when the ignition is switched on.
The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.



Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.
It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.
Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

12 V battery charge



Fixed.
The battery charging circuit is faulty (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).
Carry out (1).
If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilize the vehicle:

- With the manual gearbox, engage a gear.
- With the automatic gearbox or drive selector, fit the chock against one of the wheels.

Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning light does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Power steering



Fixed.
The power steering has a fault.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Manual parking brake



Fixed.
The parking brake is applied or not properly released.

Braking



Fixed.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.

Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).



Fixed.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Electric parking brake (MHEV or BEV)



Fixed.
The electric parking brake is applied.



Flashing.
Application/release is faulty.
Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface).
With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P**.
Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened



Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.
A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Driver Attention Warning by Camera (Drowsiness alert)



If driver drowsiness is detected by camera by driving above 65 km/h, a light and an audible signal is emitted (according to the continuos eye closures duration). **(2)**

Orange warning/indicator lights

Service



Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more minor faults, for which there is/ are no specific warning light(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.
For other faults, such as with the tire under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more major faults, for which there is/ are no specific warning light(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)



Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
The vehicle cannot be immobilized with the engine running.
If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is faulty.
The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a fault with the control.
Carry out (2).



Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
The electric parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilize the vehicle:

▶ Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator light illuminates on the instrument panel.

If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

▶ Park on a level surface.

▶ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.

▶ With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P**, then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.

Then carry out (2).

Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)



Fixed.
The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated.
If automatic application/release is no longer possible:

- Start the engine.
- Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
- Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
- Release the control.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
- Release the control and the brake pedal.

Power steering



Fixed.
A minor fault in the power steering has been detected.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Engine self-diagnostics system (ICE or MHEV)



Fixed.
A major engine fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).



Fixed.
A minor engine fault has been detected.
Carry out (3).

Engine self-diagnostic system (ICE or MHEV)



Flashing.
The engine management system has a fault.
There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
You **must** carry out (2).



Fixed.
The emissions control system has a fault.
The warning light should go off when the engine is started.
Carry out (3) without delay.

Low fuel level (ICE or MHEV)



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
When it first comes on, there remains **approximately 5 liters of fuel** in the tank (reserve).
Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, with increasing frequency as the fuel level decreases and approaches zero.
Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.
Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Low traction battery level (BEV)



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal.
The state of charge of the traction battery is low.
View the remaining range.
Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

Tortoise mode with limited driving range (BEV)



Fixed.
The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.
The engine power gradually decreases.
You must put the vehicle on charge.
If the warning light remains lit, carry out (2).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake



Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.



Fixed.
The system has a fault.
If this warning light comes on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**".
The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.



Fixed.
The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

Road signs recognition



Temporarily on.
The speed limit change sound has been deactivated.



Fixed.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**".
The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Lane keeping assist



Flashing.
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.
The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).

For more information, refer to the **Driving** 1 section.



Fixed.
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.



Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**".
The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.



Fixed.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Driver Attention Warning (Distraction detection)



Fixed.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**".
The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



Fixed.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.
The vehicle retains conventional braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Fixed.
The system is deactivated.
The indicator light in the corresponding button is on.
The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is restarted, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.



Flashing.
DSC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.



Fixed.
The DSC/ASR system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Hill start assist



Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Anti roll-back system fault**".
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Under-inflation



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The pressure in one or more tires is too low.
Check the pressure of the tires as soon as possible.
Reinitialize the detection system after adjusting the pressure.



Under-inflation warning light flashing then fixed and Service warning light fixed.
The tire pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tire pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Parking sensors



Flashing.
The system detects an obstacle.



Fixed, associated with the Service warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
At least one of the system's sensors has a fault.
Carry out (3).



Fixed, only the Service warning light.
Another type of system malfunction occurs.
Carry out (3).

Airbags



Fixed, associated with the Service warning light and accompanied by the display of a message.
One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.
Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)



Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is activated.
The control is set to the "**ON**" position.

In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)



Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.
The control is set to the "**OFF**" position.
A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning light on).

Stop & Start (ICE)



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The Stop & Start system has been deactivated manually.
The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop.
Reactivate the system via the instrument panel, using the steering-mounted controls.



Fixed.
The Stop & Start system has been deactivated automatically.
The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop, if the exterior temperature is:

- below 0°C.
- above +35°C.

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.



Flashing then fixed, accompanied by a message.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

e-Auto mode (MHEV)



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The e-Auto mode has been deactivated manually.
The petrol engine will not switch off at the next release of the accelerator pedal or at the next traffic stop.
Reactivate the mode via the instrument panel, using the steering-mounted controls.

Automatic headlight dipping



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
A function or camera malfunction is detected.
Carry out (2).

Rear foglight



Fixed.
The light is on.

Green warning/indicator lights

Stop & Start (ICE)



Fixed.
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.



Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Vehicle ready to drive (BEV)



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.
The vehicle is ready to drive and the thermal comfort systems are available.
The indicator light goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and illuminates again when the vehicle stops moving.
The indicator light will go out when you switch off the motor and exit the vehicle.

Automatic wiping



Fixed.
Automatic windshield wiping is activated.

Direction indicators



Flashing with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Daytime running lights/sidelights



Fixed.
With adequate ambient light, the daytime running lights are on.
With inadequate ambient light, the sidelights 1 are on.

Front fog lights



Fixed.
The front foglights are on.

Automatic headlight dipping



Fixed.
The function has been activated via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.
The lighting control stalk ring is in the "**AUTO**" position.
For more information, refer to the **Lighting and visibility** section.

Dipped beam headlights



Fixed.
The dipped beam headlights are on.

Blue warning/indicator lights

Main beam headlights



Fixed.
The main beam headlights are on.

Black/white warning lights

Foot on the clutch (ICE)



Fixed.
Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.
Fully depress the clutch pedal.

Foot on the brake (MHEV or ICE)

Fixed.
Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.
With the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of mode P on an automatic gearbox or a drive selector.

Pedestrian horn (MHEV or BEV)

Fixed.
Horn fault detected.
Carry out (3).

Door(s) open

Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access.
A door or the tailgate is not properly closed (speed less than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access, accompanied by an audible signal.
A door or the tailgate is not properly closed (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Lane departure warning

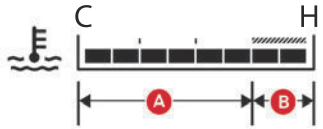
Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.
A lane marking has been crossed on the left or right.
Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory.

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed, accompanied by an onscreen message.
The system has a fault.
Stay alert and drive carefully, then carry out (3).

Indicators

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running:

- In zone **A**, the temperature is correct.
- In zone **B**, the temperature is too high.
  The associated warning light and the **STOP** warning light illuminates in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Warning
After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

Tip
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometers) and/or time (months or days).
The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.
The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:

- The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance traveled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

Tip
The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.
In accordance with the vehicle's maintenance plan, the service may consist of either:

- A yearly visit.
- A complete service.

Service spanner

On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.
Between 1,860 and 620 miles (3,000 and 1,000 km) or 60 and 21 days remain before the next service is due.

Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km) or 21 days.
Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing

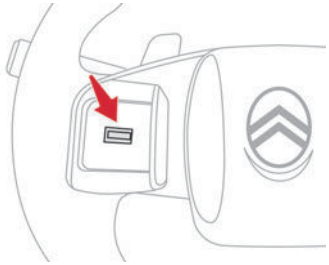
Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.
If you have serviced your vehicle yourself:

► Switch the ignition off.





► With the Accessories mode on, press the button on the steering wheel to display the menus on the instrument panel.

► Once the desired menu has been reached, press and hold the button to reset.

A countdown begins.

► When the display indicates "**0**", release the button; the spanner disappears.

Reminder of the service information

The service information can be accessed at any time.

► Press this button on the steering wheel.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)
On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information.

Tip
The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

This is indicated by the display of "**OIL OK**" or by the message "**Oil level correct**" (depending on the instrument panel).

Low oil level

This is indicated by the display of "**OIL**" or by the message "**Oil level incorrect**" (depending on the instrument panel), accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning light and an audible signal.
If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil gauge malfunction

This is indicated by the display of "**OIL_ _**" or by the message "**Oil level measurement invalid**" (depending on the instrument panel), accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning light and an audible signal.
Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Distance recorders

Total distance recorder

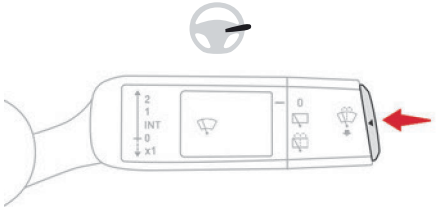
The total distance recorder measures the total distance traveled by the vehicle since its initial registration.
With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Tip
When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (miles or km): the displayed speed must be in the local country's official unit (mph or km/h).
The unit is changed via the screen's configuration application, with the vehicle stationary.

Trip distance recorder

This measures the distance traveled since it was last reset by the driver.

Resetting the trip recorder



- With the ignition on, press successively the button on the end of the wiper control stalk.
- Once the correct menu is displayed, make a long press to reset to zero.

Power indicator (MHEV or BEV)

The power indicator shows in real time the power demanded from the vehicle.
There are 3 zones:



For MHEV versions

POWER **High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor.**

The slider is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being demanded.

ECO **Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).**

The slider is located in this zone when driving under electric power and when optimal use is being made of the petrol engine, both accessible by adopting a suitable driving style.

CHARGE **Energy recovery for recharging the traction battery.**

The slider is located in this zone during deceleration: taking your foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

Tip
When the ignition is switched on and before the engine is started, the power indicator only displays **"OFF"**.

For BEV versions

CHARGE Traction battery charging during deceleration and braking.

ECO Moderate energy consumption and optimized driving range.

POWER Energy consumption by the drive train during acceleration.

NEUTRAL When the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's electric drive train neither consumes nor generates energy; after sweeping over the indicator, the cursor returns to its "neutral" position: between **ECO** and **CHARGE**.

Tip
With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator, which moves to the "neutral" position: between **ECO** and **CHARGE**.

Charge level indicator (BEV)

The traction battery's actual charge level and the remaining range are displayed continuously when the vehicle is started.

Tip
With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator.

Associated warning lights

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level:

1st level: Reserve

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.
Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal.

- ▶ View the remaining range on the instrument panel.
- ▶ Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

2nd level: Critical

The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.
Fixed, together with the reserve warning light, accompanied by an audible signal.

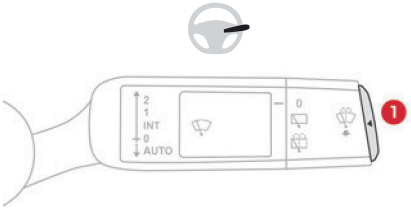
- ▶ You must put the vehicle on charge.

Warning
The remaining range is no longer calculated. The drive train power gradually decreases.

The heating and air conditioning are switched off.

Configuration menu

With LCD instrument panel



- ▶ With ignition on or engine running, make a short press on the button **(1)** on the end of the wiper control stalk.

To access the different menus:

- Odometer
- Trip A / Reset: press and hold
- Trip B / Reset: press and hold
- Range
- Amount of fuel consumption (ICE) / Amount of energy consumption (BEV) / Reset: press and hold



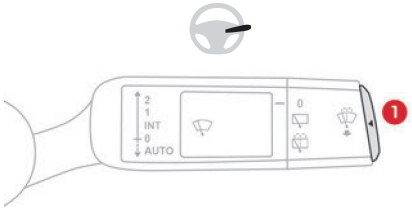
- ▶ With the ignition on, press on the thumbwheel **(2)** on the steering wheel, then press up or down through the different menus.
- ▶ Once on a menu, press on the thumbwheel again:

To access the menu settings:

- Tire pressure monitoring system / Reset: press and hold
- Brightness level
- Unit selection
- Speed limit change notification
- Driver Attention Alert
- Active safety brake
- Privacy
- Dual maintenance (distance and time remaining)

- ▶ With the Accessories mode on, press on the thumbwheel **(2)** on the steering wheel:
  - ▶ to display the service reminder
  - ▶ for 10 seconds to reset the service indicator

With matrix instrument panel



▶ With ignition on or engine running, make a short press on the button **(1)** on the end of the wiper control stalk.

To access the different menus:

- Odometer
- Trip A / Reset: press and hold
- Trip B / Reset: press and hold
- Range / Amount of fuel consumption (ICE or MHEV) / Amount of energy consumption (BEV)
- Gauge
- Flow page (MHEV)



▶ With the ignition on, press on the thumbwheel **(2)** on the steering wheel, then press up or down through the different menus.

▶ Once on a menu, press on the thumbwheel again, then press up or down through the different the sub-menus:

To access the different menus:

- Driver Assistant
  - Auto High Beam
  - Active safety brake
  - Speed Change Alert
  - Driver Attention Alert
  - Tire pressure monitoring system / Reset: press and hold
- User Settings
  - Language Selection
  - Unit Selection
  - Gauge Selection
  - Brightness Level
  - Ambient Level
  - Privacy
  - Dual maintenance (distance and time remaining)

Tip
The selection of the display language in the Instrument panel is independent from the infotainment touch screen. Refer to the "Infotainment" section to change the touchscreen language.

▶ Once on a sub-menu, press on the thumbwheel again to access the sub-menu settings.

▶ With the Accessories mode on, press on the thumbwheel **(2)** on the steering wheel:

▶ to display the service reminder

▶ for 10 seconds to reset the service indicator

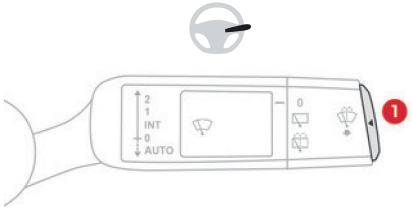
Trip computer

Displays information related to the current trip (e.g. range, average consumption, average speed, distance traveled).

Information display

Details are displayed successively.

- Trip mileage.
- Range.
- Current fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Stop & Start time counter.
- Information from the speed limit recognition system.



▶ Press the button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.

End of trip page

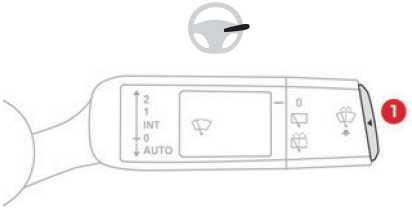
(Depending on version)

When the ignition is switched off, the instrument panel automatically displays an additional page of the trip computer that recapitulates information about the last trip. The end of trip page contains the following information:

- Range.
- Trip time.
- Distance traveled.
- Percentage of the current journey traveled in all-electric driving mode (MHEV).
- Average consumption.

Trip reset

The reset is performed when the trip counter is displayed.

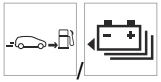


► Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than 2 seconds.

Definitions

Range

(miles or km)
(Traction battery charge level percentage)
(BEV)



Distance that can still be traveled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometers) traveled) (ICE).

Actual traction battery charge level and remaining range (BEV).
This value may vary following a change in driving style or terrain, leading to a significant change in current fuel consumption.

For ICE versions

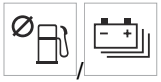
When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 liters of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).
Dashes appearing permanently in place of numbers while driving indicates a malfunction. Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For BEV versions

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level.
For more information on the **Indicators**, and in particular the **Charge level indicator**, refer to the corresponding section.

Current consumption (depending on version)

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
(miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (BEV)



Calculated during the last few seconds.
This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average consumption (depending on version)

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
(miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (BEV)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)



If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start function, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted manually to suit the ambient light level.

► With the lights on, adjust the brightness of the lighting via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

For more information on the **Configuration menu**, refer to the corresponding section.

Privacy Settings

This function allows the user to share, or not share, data with the off-board.
The default setting is "**Private mode**".
Confidentiality settings can be accessed via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.
There are three available modes.
For more information on the **Configuration menu**, refer to the corresponding section.

Privacy settings

The "Privacy Settings" management is associated with each profile. This function is used with: a "Guest" and "Driver" profiles, which are pre-configured by default in "Private Mode" or
A profile to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device. For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy mode saved value will be restore.

"Share data and location"



This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

Tip
The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.

"Share data"



This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

Tip
Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

Tip
This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by 'Over The Air' technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).

"Private mode"



This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.

Tip
Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

Tip
This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by 'Over The Air' technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).

Tip
Professional purposes. If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

Smartphone Station

The Smartphone Station system allows to connect a smartphone with the vehicle's equipment, such as the speakers.
Use the steering-mounted controls to manage certain functions.
The user interface is provided by the **Smartphone Station** feature integrated into the **MyCitroën App** mobile application.
Once the mobile application has been installed and the smartphone connected to the system,

it is possible to access the following functions and customize the dashboard:

- Online Radio and Radio Tuner[1].
- Phone (e.g. Contacts, Dialpad).
- Navigation (e.g. e-Routes, Waze).
- Media (e.g. Deezer, Amazon Music).
- Library (e.g. mp3 audio files).
- Calendar notifications (e.g. Google Calendar for Android).

Tip
The system is not compatible with a tablet or laptop.
During use, it is recommended charging the smartphone via USB at the same time.

Warning
For safety reasons, certain functions or operations requiring sustained attention are not accessible when driving.

Warning
Always place the smartphone **in a vertical position while driving** so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone.

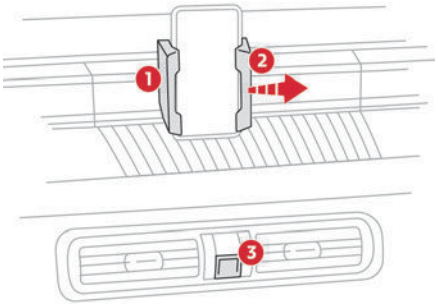
The smartphone can only be positioned horizontally when the vehicle is stationary.

[1] Depending on country.

Operation

First use / Installation procedure

- ▶ Download the **MyCitroën App** mobile application onto your smartphone from the appropriate online store.
- ▶ Create a user account or re-use your current **MyCitroën** account.



- ▶ Pull the right clamp arm **(2)** of the station and install the smartphone against the left clamp arm **(1)**.
- ▶ Release the right clamp arm **(2)** against the smartphone to secure it to the dashboard.
- ▶ Start the **Smartphone Station** feature, read the legal and safety instructions and then confirm them.
- ▶ Activate the Bluetooth® function on the smartphone.
- ▶ With the ignition on, press and hold button **(3)** to pair the smartphone with the system.
- ▶ Select the system name "**MyCitroën XXXXXXX**" from the list of devices detected on the smartphone (the "X" characters corresponds to the last digits of the VIN).

The system then suggests setting up automatic reconnection using **NFC** technology. This setting is optional.

To set the **NFC** parameters later, select "**Settings > General > Auto-launch**" from this menu.

Tip
NFC communication must first be activated on the smartphone.

Finally, the application's home page appears.

Automatic reconnection

Thanks to **NFC** technology, the application can be launched automatically if the smartphone is already recognized by the system and if the smartphone's **NFC** settings have already been made with the system.

- ▶ Otherwise, press button **(3)** briefly to display the application's home page.

Steering-mounted controls



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Unmute the sound: short-press in the centre.



Short press: validate a selection; movement in the lists.
Radio: next station (in the list of favorites radio stations).
Media: next track.
Phone (short press): accept the incoming call.



Short press: validate a selection; movement in the lists.
Radio: previous station (in the list of favorites radio stations).
Media: previous track.
Phone (short press): refuse the incoming call; hang up the call in progress.



Voice control:

Short press, voice commands of the smartphone connected using Bluetooth® (Siri with Apple®/Google Assistant with Android) via the system.

Main controls

The main controls used on the various pages of the **Smartphone Station** feature are as follows:



Access to menu (**Phone, Online Radio, Tutorials** and **Settings**)



Exit of application



Return to previous page



Close current page



Search

A B C Search filters (alphabetical or numerical)



Refresh current page



Access to details



Adding or removing favorites



Random playback



Repeat media



Call via telephone keypad



Call via phonebook contacts

For more information on the various functions of the **Smartphone Station** feature, refer to the **Tutorials** section of the menu.

10-inch touch screen

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Time and date.
- Settings for audio equipment.
- Display of visual maneuvering aid functions.
- Audio equipment and telephone controls with display of associated information.
- Connected services and display of associated information.
- Voice recognition.
- Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).

Warning
For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention. Some functions are not accessible while driving.

Recommendations

This screen uses capacitive sensing technology.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

▶ Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Main controls



On the right side

Power on/off
Screen on/off

Increase the volume

Decrease the volume

Mute/Unmute

On the left side

Access to the home page and to the widgets wall

Tip
From any page, press the touch screen with three or more fingers to display the applications wall.

In the screen

Close the current window

Return to the previous page

▶ To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding line (change confirmed by the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/deactivated).

▶ Depending on the pages displayed on the screen, with or without the context menu, scroll the text by swiping with your finger, as with a smartphone.

Applications

Press the dedicated button on the left side:

Radio

Select a radio station (AM, FM and DAB).

Media

Select a sound source (USB, iPod®, Bluetooth®, Apple®CarPlay® and Android Auto).

Phone

Connect a smartphone via Bluetooth®, make and receive calls, access the contact list, call history.

Navigation

(Depending on equipment) Configure guidance and choose a destination.
Use the services available in real time depending on equipment.

Settings

Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and GPS.
To obtain more information about these applications, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematic systems.

Remotely operable additional functions (BEV)

(Depending on country of sale)

Download on the App Store GET IT ON Google Play



The following functions are available from the **My-Citroën App** application, which is accessible from a smartphone:

- Managing the traction battery charging (deferred charging).
- Managing the temperature pre-conditioning.
- Viewing the state of charge and range of the vehicle.

Installation procedure

▶ Download the **MyCitroën App** application from the appropriate online store for your smartphone.

▶ Create an account.

▶ Enter the vehicle identification number (available on the vehicle registration certificate).

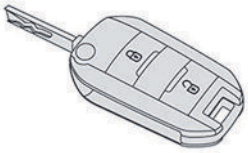
For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip

Network coverage. In order to be able to use the various remotely operable features, ensure that your vehicle is located in an area covered by the mobile network. A lack of network coverage may prevent communication with the vehicle (for example, if it is in an underground car park). In such cases, the application will display a message indicating that the connection with the vehicle could not be established.

Remote control - Key

Remote control function

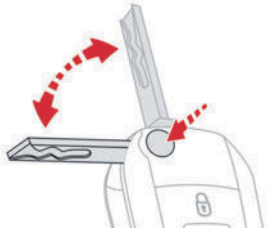


The remote control can be used to perform the following remote functions (depending on version):

- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Opening the fuel tank cap.
- Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
- Locating the vehicle.
- Activating the vehicle's electronic immobilizer.

The remote control includes a conventional key that allows the central unlocking/locking of the vehicle using the door lock, as well as starting and switching off the engine.
Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unfolding / Folding the key



▶ Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

Warning
The remote control may be damaged if you do not press the button.

Unlocking the vehicle

▶ Press this button to unlock the vehicle.

When the unlocking button is pressed, the flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- The unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.
- The deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking

▶ Press this button.

When the locking button is pressed, the lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- The locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.
- The activation of the alarm for other versions.

Tip
If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, the locking does not take place. However, if the vehicle is equipped with the alarm, it is fully activated after about 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the alarm was activated beforehand, the alarm is reactivated automatically.

Deadlocking

Warning
Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.
The horn remains operational only for the left-hand drive vehicle.

Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

- ▶ Ignition off, press the locking button.
- ▶ Press the locking button again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

Advice

Warning
Remote control. The remote control is a sensitive, highfrequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.
Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.
The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

Warning
Anti-theft protection. Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.
For vehicles with a key ignition switch, remember to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

Warning
Locking the vehicle.
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Tip
Purchasing a second-hand vehicle.
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

Tip
If one of the doors or the boot is still open, central locking will not take place. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

Tip
If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control

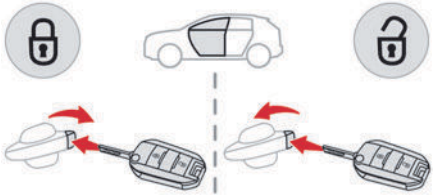
Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:

- Remote control battery discharged.
- Remote control malfunction.
- Vehicle battery discharged.
- Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.
In the second case, reinitialize the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.



- ▶ Insert the key into the door lock.

▶ Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.

Tip
If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- Central locking malfunction.
- Battery disconnected or discharged.

Warning
In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Front left-hand door

▶ Insert the key into the door lock.

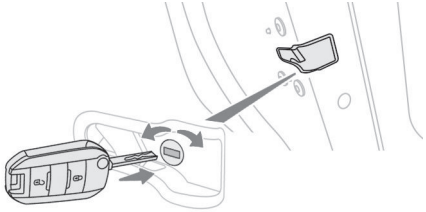
▶ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Other doors

Unlocking

▶ Pull the interior door opening control.

Locking



- Open the doors.
- For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.

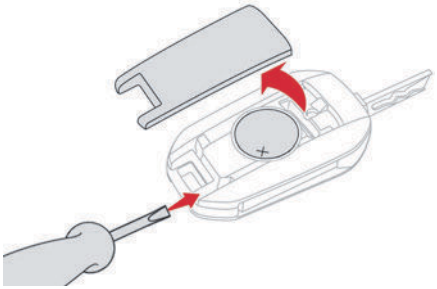
- Gently insert the key into the latch located in the door lock, then turn the latch an eighth of a turn towards the outside of the door.
- Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

A message is displayed on the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

If the battery is flat, this warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.



▶ Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.

▶ Remove the flat battery from its housing.

▶ Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.

Restriction
Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

Warning
This equipment contains a button type battery.
Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns! Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.
If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.

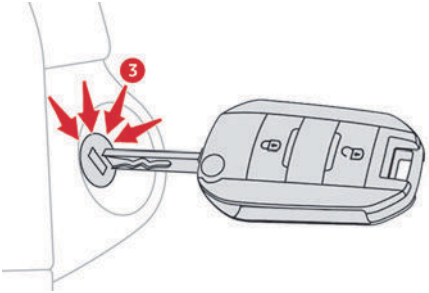
Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.
If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

Warning
Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type! Replace the battery with the same type.

Warning
Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

Reinitialize the remote control

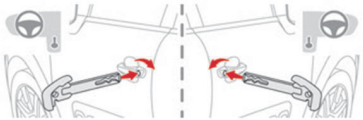
Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialize the remote control.



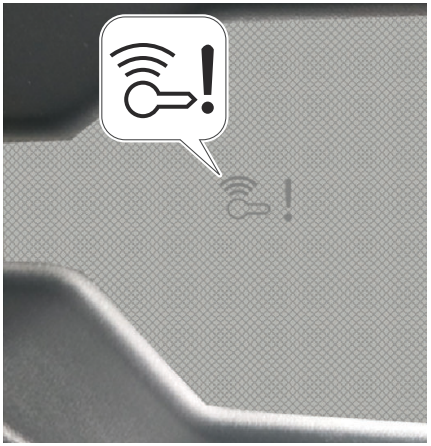
- Switch the ignition off.
- Turn the key to position **3 (Ignition on)**.
- Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

With Keyless Entry and Start



- Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.



- place the electronic key on on the cupholder in the center console.



- With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- With an automatic gearbox, while in mode P, depress the brake pedal.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Doors

Opening

From outside

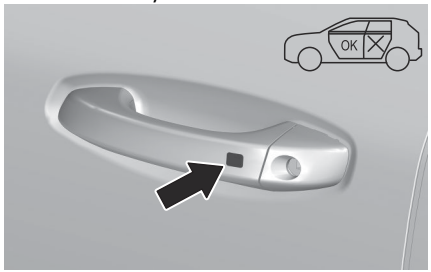
▶ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

From inside

▶ Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

Passive Entry

(where provided)
The system can identify the presence of an electronic key near the driver's door (and the tailgate) to unlock/lock the driver's door (or the tailgate) without having to press any button on the electronic key.



If the system identifies that the electronic key found is valid, the owner of the key can simply grasp one of the front handles to release the alarm and unlock the door and tailgate opening mechanism.
To lock the door, make sure having the electronic key and stay within the 1.2m operating range of the driver or passenger side door handle.
Press the button on the handle: this will lock all doors and the boot tailgate. Door locking will also activate the alarm as well (where provided).

Warning
Do not simultaneously lock and unlock by pulling the handle.

Warning
If wearing gloves, or if it has rained and the door handle is wet, the activation sensitivity of the Passive Entry function may be reduced, resulting in a longer reaction time.

Fault

The operation of the recognition system depends on various factors, such as:

- any electromagnetic wave interference from external sources (e.g. mobile phones),
- the charge of the battery in the electronic key
- the presence of metal objects near the key or the vehicle.

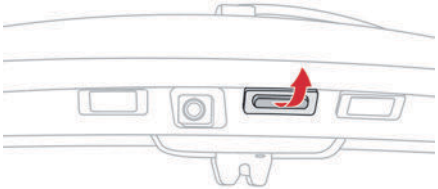
In these cases it is still possible to unlock the doors by using the metal insert in the electronic key.

Unlocking And Opening The Tailgate

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened hands-free by pushing the button under the tailgate moulding when the electronic key is within 1.2m of the vehicle.

Boot

Opening



▶ With the vehicle unlocked, press the central tailgate control.
▶ Lift the tailgate.

For more information on the **Remote control**, please refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
The tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

Closing

▶ Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

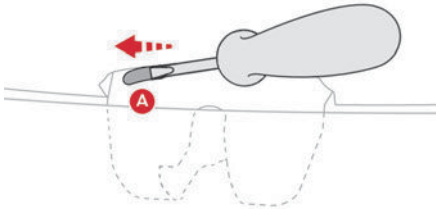
Warning
In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

► Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



► Insert a small screwdriver into hole **(A)** of the lock to unlock the boot.

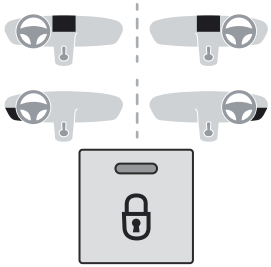
► Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Tip
In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Central locking



Manual

► Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the passenger compartment.

The indicator light comes on to confirm the central locking of the vehicle.

Warning
Central locking does not take place if any of the front doors or rear doors are open (opening the boot does not prevent the central locking from operating).

Tip
When locking/deadlocking from the outside. When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp is deactivated.

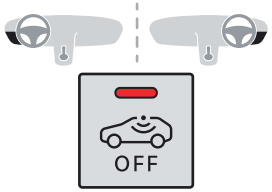
- After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- After deadlocking, you must use the remote control to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically while driving (speed above 3 mph (5 km/h)).

Tip
Transporting long or voluminous objects. Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked.
Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.
Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.
Above 3 mph (5 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the hood, for example.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm goes off if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

Tip
When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

Tip
Electric vehicles Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced or even suspended during temperature pre-conditioning sequences.

Self-protection function

The system checks whether any of its components are out of service.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

Warning
Work on the alarm system. Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.
- ▶ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control.

When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator light in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

Warning
Door, boot or bonnet. If an opening is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation



- ▶ Press the remote control unlocking button.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator light in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

Tip
After unlocking using the remote control. If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically activated.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:

- Presence of an occupant or a pet. Slightly open window.
- Washing the vehicle.
- Changing a wheel.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator light is on fixed.
- ▶ Get out of the vehicle.
- ▶ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator light flashes once every second.

Tip
To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control.

The indicator light in the button goes off.

► Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control.

The red indicator light in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the red indicator light in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

► Unlock the vehicle using the key in the front left-hand door lock.

► Open the door; the alarm is triggered.

► Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm.

The indicator light in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

► Lock the vehicle using the key in the front left-hand door lock.

Automatic activation

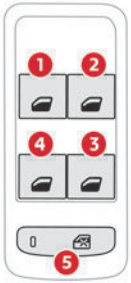
(Depending on version)
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

► To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, press the unlocking button on the remote control.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator light in the button indicates a system malfunction.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Right-hand rear
4. Left-hand rear
5. Deactivation of electric window controls located by rear seats

Manual operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

Operate for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.
Depending on version, long pushing or pulling: the window moves up or down completely when the switch is released.
Short pushing or pulling: the window moves up or down as long as is operated.

Tip
Window controls remain operational for approximately 60 seconds after switching off the ignition or after locking the vehicle.
After that time, the controls are disabled.
To reactivate them, switch on the ignition or unlock the vehicle.

Anti-pinch

(Depending on version)
If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

Tip
Overtaking of the anti-pinch. After triggering the anti-pinch, check that there are no obstacles blocking the movement of the window.
Try to close the window again.
If the window closing is interrupted by the anti-pinch 3 times in a row (max. 10 seconds between each action), the anti-pinch function becomes inoperable.
Without this protection, the window can only be closed manually - risk of injury!

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows



For your children's safety, ignition on or engine on, press control **(5)** to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions.
The red indicator light in the button comes on and a confirmation message is displayed.
The light will remain lit until the controls are reactivated.
The rear electric windows can still be controlled using the driver's controls.

Reinitialize the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, overvoltage, or in the event of abnormal window behavior, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialized.

Tip
Automatic window closing is no longer available, only manual closing is possible.
Remote window closing with the electronic key is also no longer available in this case.

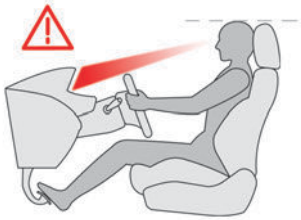
The anti-pinch function is inoperable during the following sequence of operations.

For each window:

- Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimeters each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
- Continue to pull the control for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

Warning
If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.
When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows remotely using the electronic key.
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Correct driving position



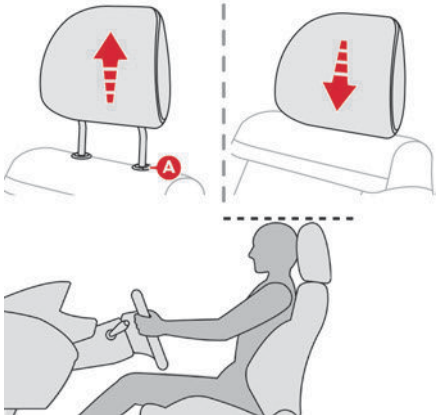
Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- head restraint height.
- seat backrest angle.
- seat cushion height.
- longitudinal seat position.
- steering wheel reach and then height.
- rear view mirror and door mirrors.

Tip
Once these adjustments have been made, check that the "head-up" instrument panel can be viewed correctly over the smaller diameter steering wheel.

Front head restraints

Adjusting the height



Upwards:

▶ Pull the head restraint up to the desired position; you can feel the head restraint clicking into position.

Downwards:

▶ Press lug **(A)** to lower the head restraint.

Tip
The head restraint is correctly adjusted when its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
▶ Press lug **(A)** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
▶ Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

▶ Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
▶ Push the head restraint fully down.
▶ Press the lug **(A)** to release the head restraint and push it down.
▶ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

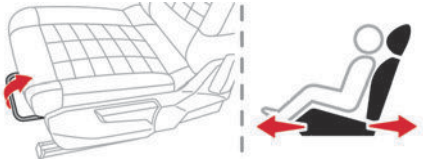
Warning
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Front seats

Warning
For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

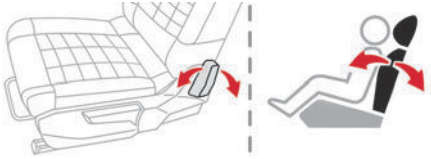
Warning
Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Longitudinal



- ▶ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- ▶ Release the control bar to lock the seat in position on one of the notches.

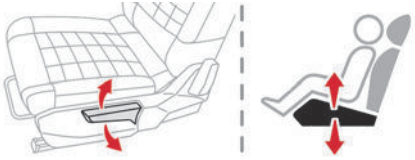
Backrest angle



- ▶ Push the control backwards and tilt the backrest forwards or backwards to obtain the desired angle.

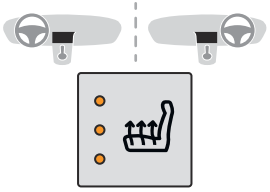
Height

(driver only)



- ▶ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, until you obtain the position required.

Heated seats



The function is active only with the engine running and when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

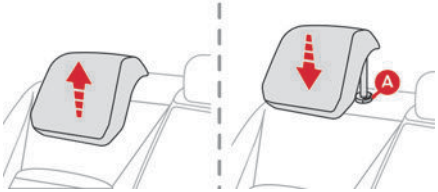
- ▶ Press the button corresponding to the seat.
- ▶ Each press changes the heating level; the corresponding number of indicator lights come on.
- ▶ To switch off the heating, press the button until all of the indicator lights are off.

Restriction
Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

Warning
Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Rear head restraints

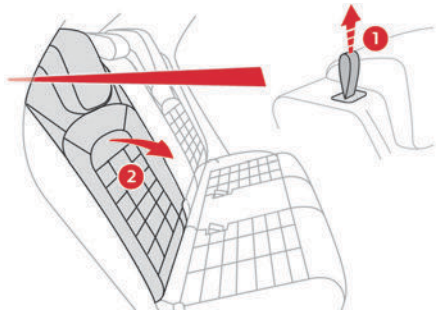


They have two positions:

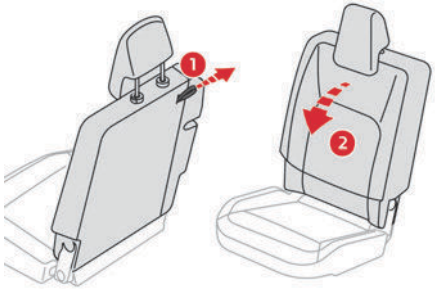
- ▶ A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
  - ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- ▶ A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
  - ▶ Press the lug **(A)** to release the head estraint and push it down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

Removing a head restraint



Row 2



Row 3 (7-seater version)

- ▶ Release the backrest using the strap **(1)**.
- ▶ Tilt the backrest **(2)** slightly forwards.
- ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- ▶ Press the lug **(A)** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

Refitting a head restraint

- ▶ Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding backrest.
- ▶ Push the head restraint fully down.
- ▶ Press the lug **(A)** to release the head restraint and push it down.

Warning
Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position.
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.



Second row seats

Folding/Repositioning the backrests

Warning
Manoeuvring the backrests should only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

Folding the backrest

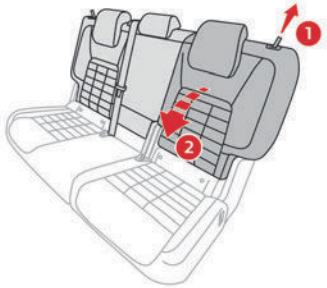
First steps:

- ▶ Lower the head restraints.If necessary, move the front seats forward.
- ▶ Check that no person or object might interfere with the folding of the backrests (e.g. clothing, luggage).
- ▶ Check that the seat belts are free, not engaged in the buckles.
- ▶ Release them so that the backrest can be moved.

Tip
To obtain the flattest possible surface or if you load on the backrest, remove the head restraint(s) from the backrest.
For more information on **Rear head restraints**, refer to the corresponding section.



5-seater version



7-seater version

- ▶ Pull the strap **(1)** firmly to release the backrest.
- ▶ Guide the backrest **(2)** down to the horizontal position.

Repositioning the backrest

Warning
First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.

- ▶ Put the backrest **(2)** in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- ▶ Check that the release strap **(1)** has correctly returned to its position.
- ▶ Ensure that the outer seat belts were not trapped during the operation.

Warning
Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forwards - risk of serious injury!

Access to third row/Exit from third row (7 seater)

Third-row seats are accessed via the second row.



Warning
Do not let children operate the seats unsupervised.

Tip
Before tumbling the second-row seat, ensure the corresponding front seat is moved forward appropriately.

Access to third row

- ▶ From outside the vehicle, pull the strap **(1)** to fold the seat backrest **(2)**.
- ▶ Pull the strap **(3)** to tilt the folded seat assembly forward.

Exit from third row

- ▶ From inside the vehicle, pull the strap **(1)** to fold the seat backrest **(2)**.
- ▶ Pull the strap **(4)** to tilt the folded seat assembly forward.

Return to the sitting position of the second-row seat

- ▶ Tilt the folded seat back to engage the latches into the rear fixing points on the boot floor.
- ▶ Raise the seat backrest **(2)** to return it to the use position.
- ▶ Check that the seat belt is not trapped during the manoeuvre.



Warning
It is prohibited to drive with a second-row backrest folded in cargo version (for transporting objects), while a passenger occupies a third-row seat.
Third-row passengers should not keep the feet in the second-row seat locking zone.

Third row seats (7 seater)

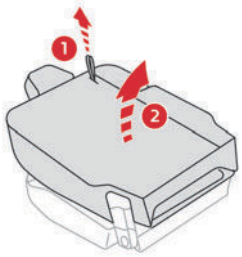
Positioning/Storing the seats

These operations are carried out from the boot sill.

Warning
Do not let children operate the seats unsupervised.

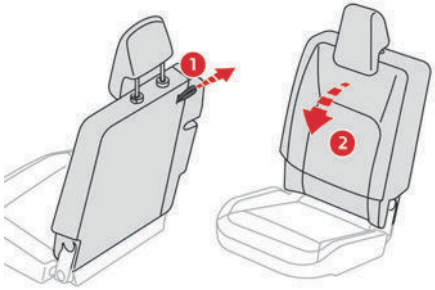
Positioning the seat

- Before starting, remove the removable protective sub-floor.



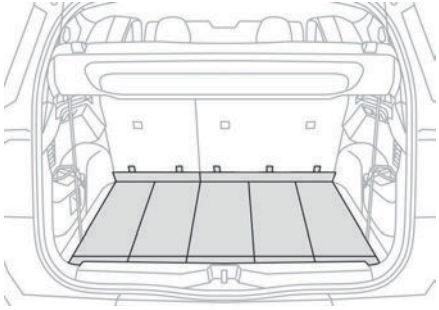
- Remove the rear cover shelf.
- Seat folded into the boot floor, pull strap **(1)** to unlock the backrest.
- Raise the backrest **(2)** fully to lock it in the unfolded position.
- When a passenger occupies the seat, move the head restraint upwards.

Storing the seat



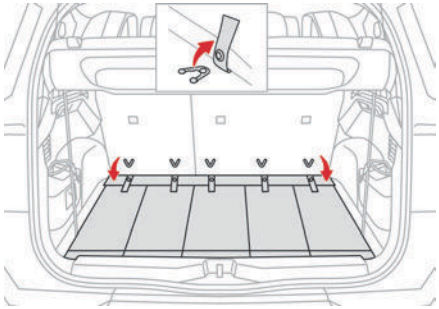
- Move the head restraint downwards
- Seat unfolded, pull strap **(1)** to unlock the backrest.
- Tilt the backrest **(2)** fully to lock it in the folded position.
- Install the rear cover shelf back in place.
- Finally, refitting the removable protective sub-floor.

Removable protective sub-floor



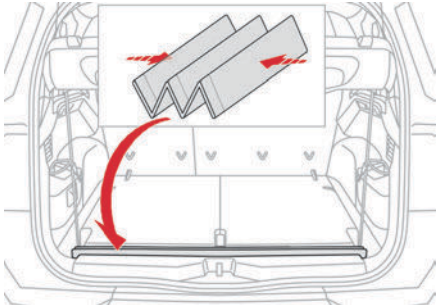
This removable protection is divided into two parts 2/3 - 1/3.
Each part attaches to the back of the corresponding backrest in row 2.
When the seats in row 3 are not occupied by passengers, these two parts ensure continuity between the two rows of rear seats and create a flat floor.
When the seats in row 3 are occupied by passengers, these two parts must be removed and stored.

Removing a removable protection



- Fold down the corresponding backrest in the second row.
- Pull each of the tabs forwards to remove them from their mountings.

Storage of a removable protection

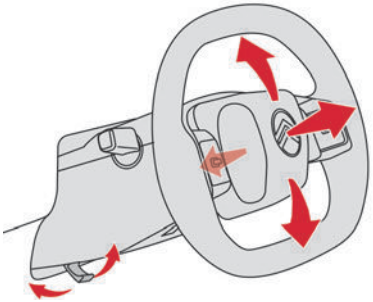


- Fold each part onto itself.
- Store each part in the boot floor between the seats in third row and the boot sill.

Refitting a removable protection

- ▶ Fold down the corresponding backrest in the second row.
- ▶ Insert each of the tabs in their mountings and pull backwards.

Steering wheel adjustment



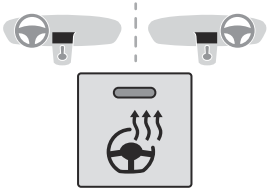
- ▶ When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
- ▶ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position in a smooth way.
- ▶ Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

Warning
For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Heated steering wheel

(Depending on country of sale)

In cold weather, this function heats the circular part of the steering wheel.
It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.



- ▶ With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator light coming on/ going out).

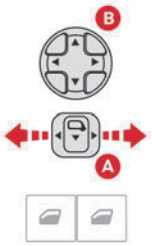
Mirrors

Door mirrors

Warning
As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots".
The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Adjustment





- ▶ Move control **(A)** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ▶ Move control **(B)** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ▶ Return control **(A)** to its central position.

Manual folding

The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).

- ▶ Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

Depending on equipment, the door mirrors can be folded electrically.



- ▶ From the inside, with the ignition on, place control **(A)** in the central position.
- ▶ Pull control **(A)** backwards.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle from the outside.

Tip
If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Electric unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle.
- From inside: with the ignition on, place control **(A)** in the central position and then pull it rearwards.

Activation/deactivation

The automatic door mirror folding/unfolding function is configured via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

Demisting/Defrosting

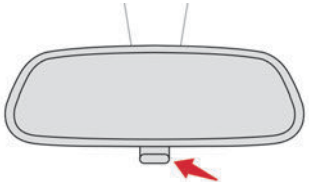
The demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors works with the demisting/ defrosting of the rear screen. For more information on **Rear screen demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Interior rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Day/night position

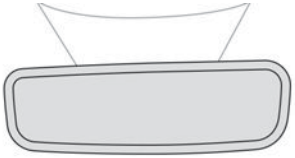


- Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Adjustment

- Adjust the mirror to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



The electrochrome system uses a sensor that detects the level of exterior brightness and that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

Tip
To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged.

The system is inoperative if the load in the boot exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

Heating and Ventilation

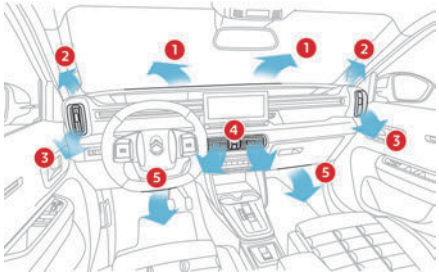
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windshield, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

The controls are grouped together on the center console panel.
The demisting/defrosting controls for the windshield and the rear screen are located below the touch screen, or on the center console panel located below the audio system.

Air distribution



1. Windshield demisting/defrosting vents

2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents
3. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents
5. Air outlets to the front footwells

Advice

Tip
Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

Warning
Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

Restriction
If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

Tip
Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Tip
Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

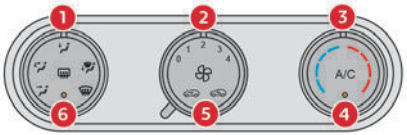
We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.

- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

Tip
Stop & Start / e-Auto mode (where provided). The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the corresponding system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment. For more information, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
Electric vehicles. Selecting the ECO driving mode reduces electrical energy consumption, but restricts the performance of the heating and air conditioning systems, although it does not deactivate them.

Heating/Manual air conditioning



The heating/manual air conditioning operate in Accessories mode and when the engine is running.

1. Air distribution adjustment
2. Air flow adjustment
3. Temperature adjustment
4. Air conditioning on/off

5. Recirculation of interior air
6. Rear screen demisting / defrosting

Adjusting the temperature

▶ Turn the knob **(3)** from blue (cold) to red (hot).

Adjusting the air flow

▶ Turn the thumbwheel **(2)** to obtain a sufficient air flow to ensure your comfort.

Tip
If the air flow control is in the **minimum** position (system deactivated), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Adjusting the air distribution


Central and side air vents


Central and side air vents and footwells


Footwells


Windshield and side windows and footwells


Windshield and side windows

▶ Turn the knob **(1)** to select the desired air outlet.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windshield and side windows.
The recirculation of interior air allows the passenger compartment to be isolated from polluted air in areas of heavy traffic and inside tunnels.

Tip
When required, this function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

▶ Rotate the selector **(5)** to allow the interior air recirculation (right) or the intake of exterior air (left).

Warning
Avoid the prolonged recirculation of interior air in order to ensure a good supply of fresh air and reduce the risk of misting (especially when several passengers are on board or when the air is cold/damp, etc.).

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed:

- It lowers the temperature in summer.
- It increases the effectiveness of the demisting, in winter, above 3°C.

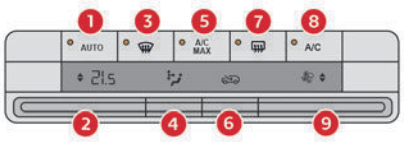
▶ Press button **(4)** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

Tip
Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated.
To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.
Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

Tip
The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow adjustment is set to OFF.

Automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls can be accessed with the ignition on.
With the air conditioning on, regulation of temperature and interior air recirculation are controlled manually.



1. Automatic air conditioning on/off
2. Temperature adjustment
3. Front demisting / defrosting
4. Air distribution adjustment
5. Maximum A/C
6. Interior air recirculation
7. Rear screen demisting / defrosting
8. Air conditioning on/off
9. Air flow adjustment

Automatic air conditioning

This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.

► Press the button **(1) AUTO** to activate/ deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

Tip
In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Temperature adjustment

► Push the button **(2)** up to increase the value or down to decrease it.

The value displayed corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

Air distribution adjustment

► Pushing button **(4)** successively directs the air flow.

Possible option:

- central and side vents.
- central vents, side vents and footwells.
- central vents, side vents, footwells, windshield and side windows.
- footwells.
- windshield, side windows and footwells.
- windshield and side windows (demisting or defrosting).
- windshield, side windows, central vents and side vents.

Air flow adjustment

► Push the button **(9)** up to increase the air flow or down to decrease it.

The air flow symbol is filled in or emptied gradually, according to the value set.

Maximum air conditioning

This function automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, the air distribution towards the central and side air vents, the air flow to maximum and activates interior air recirculation.

► Press button **(5)** to activate/deactivate the function.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windshield and side windows.
The recirculation of interior air allows the passenger compartment to be isolated from polluted air in areas of heavy traffic and inside tunnels.

Tip
When required, this function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

► Press button **(6)** to recirculate the interior air or allow the intake of exterior air.

Warning
Avoid the prolonged recirculation of interior air in order to ensure a good supply of fresh air and reduce the risk of misting (especially when several passengers are on board or when the air is cold/damp, etc.).

Air conditioning on / off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It is used to:

- lower the temperature in summer.
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

► Press button **(8)** to turn the air conditioning on/off.

Tip
The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow adjustment is set to OFF.

Front demisting/ defrosting

This mode allows the windshield and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.



► Depending on equipment, turn the knob or press this button to activate/ deactivate the mode (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator light).

The mode automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow, air intake and distributes ventilation optimally to the windshield and side windows.

Tip
With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Warning
In wintry conditions, before moving off, it is essential to remove any snow or ice from the windscreen around the camera. Otherwise, the operation of the equipment using the camera may be affected.

Rear screen demisting/ defrosting

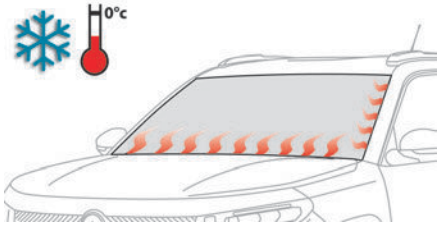
This demisting/defrosting only works with the engine running.
Depending on version, it also demists/defrosts the door mirrors.



► Press this button to activate/ deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator light coming on/ switching off).

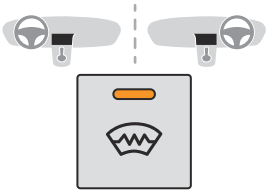
The function can be activated whatever the outside temperature may be.
The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.
Demisting/defrosting therefore switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.

Heated windshield



In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windshield, as well as the area alongside the left-hand windshield pillar.
Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windshield wiper blades when they are frozen to the windshield and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windshield wipers.

Switching on/off



► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator light).

The function is activated when the outside temperature drops below 0°C. It is deactivated automatically when the engine is switched off.

Temperature preconditioning (BEV)

This function allows you to program the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C or 23°C depending on version) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.

Programming

The programming is carried out from

- ▶ a smartphone via the **MyCitroën App** application
- ▶ via the central screen by selecting "**Vehicle settings / Delayed charging**" and via the push on the flap.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.
The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately **30** minutes before the programmed time.

Tip
You can set multiple programmes. Each one is saved in the system.
To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.

Tip
The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.

Operating conditions

- The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off**, the drive selector is in **Parking mode**, the **windows are closed** and the **vehicle is locked**.
- The function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 30%.
- When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring program is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature preconditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the program will be deactivated.

Courtesy lights



1. Front courtesy light
2. Front reading lights

Front courtesy light

In this position, the courtesy light comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
- when a door is opened.
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked.
- when the ignition is switched on.
- 20 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

In "Permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

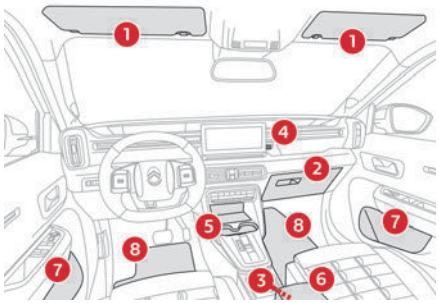
- With the ignition off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

Reading lights

▶ With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

Warning
Do not place anything against the courtesy lamps.

Interior fittings



1. Sun visor
2. Glove box
3. 12 V accessory socket (max. 120 W)
4. USB socket
5. Open storage with double cup holder
6. Front armrest (depending on version)
7. Storage trays
8. Mats (depending on version)

Sun visor

The sun visors are fitted with a vanity mirror with concealing flap.

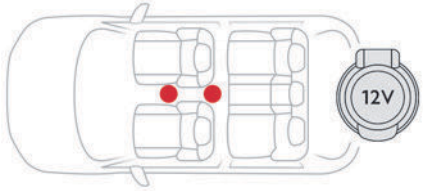
Glove box

► To open the glove box, lift the handle.

With the ignition on, the glove box is lit when open.

Warning
Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

12 V accessory sockets



► Plug in a 12 V accessory (with a maximum rated power of 120 W) using a suitable adapter.

Warning
Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

Warning
The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

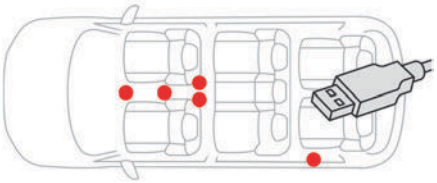
USB sockets

These symbols determine the type of use of a USB socket:

Power supply and recharging.

Likewise, plus exchange of multimedia data with the audio system.

Likewise, plus use of smartphone applications with the touch screen.



Depending on equipment, the vehicle is fitted with:

- One or two USB sockets on the dashboard.
- One USB socket on the center console.
- One or two USB sockets on the 2nd row.

Wireless smartphone charger





This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the manufacturer.
The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.
The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.

Charging

► With the charging area clear, place a device in its center.



When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator light illuminates green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

Warning
The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

Warning
Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged
- Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!



Warning
When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

Checking operation

The state of the indicator light allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator light	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Fixed green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centered in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.



If the indicator light is fixed orange:

► remove the device, then place it back in the center of the charging zone.

or

► remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

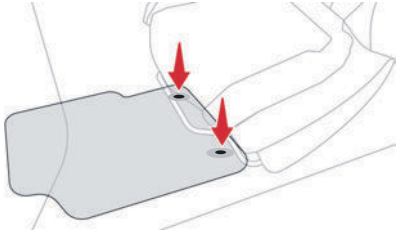
Clothes hooks



They are located above each rear door.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting

- ▶ To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
- ▶ To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.
- ▶ Check that the mat is secured correctly.

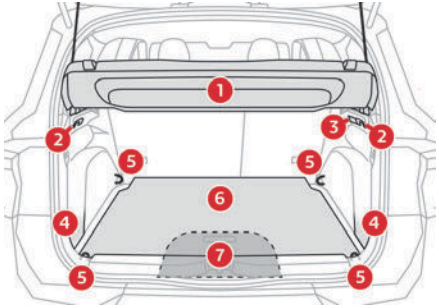
Warning
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/ speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

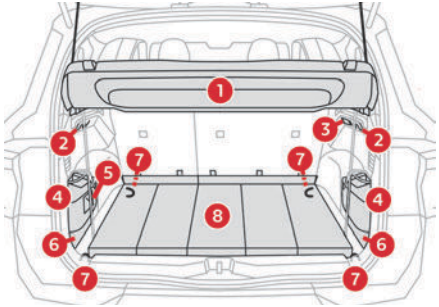
Boot fittings

5-seater version



1. Rear cover shelf
2. Hooks
3. Lighting
4. Open storage bins
   Tool box (depending on version)
5. Stowing rings
6. Boot carpet or 2-position boot floor
7. Tool box (depending on version)

7-seater version

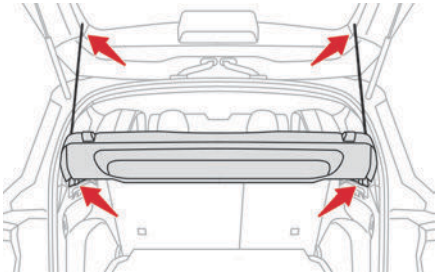


1. Rear cover shelf
2. Hooks
3. Lighting
4. Armrest with cup holder
5. USB socket
6. Open storage bins
   Tool box
7. Stowing rings
8. Removable protective sub-floor

Load space cover shelf

It consists of two sections:

- a fixed section with an open storage space.
- a movable section which rises when the boot is opened, with an open storage space.



To remove the load space cover shelf:

- ▶ Unhook the two cords.
- ▶ Raise the movable section slightly.
- ▶ Unclip the fixed section on each side, then take out the load space cover shelf.

Warning
In the event of sudden deceleration, objects placed on the load space cover shelf can turn into projectiles.

Hooks

They are used to hang shopping bags.

Warning
Take care to only hang lightweight bags.

2-position boot floor

(Depending on version)

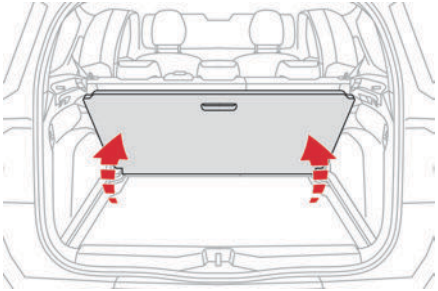
This 2-position floor allows the boot volume to be optimised using the lateral stops located on the sides:

- High position (**100 kg max.**): to obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down.
- Low position (**150 kg max.**): maximum boot volume.

Tip
On certain versions, the adjustable boot floor cannot be fitted in the low position.

To change the height:

- ▶ Lift and pull the floor towards you using its central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.
- ▶ Push the floor all the way forwards to place it in the desired position.



To keep it in the inclined position:

- ▶ From the high position, lift the floor towards the boot.
- ▶ Engage it in the inclined position in the lateral stops to secure it in this position.

Boot light

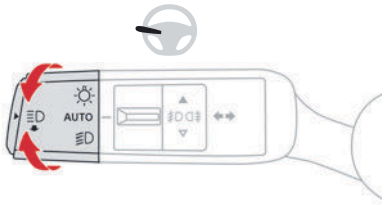
It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.
The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

Exterior lighting control stalk

Main lighting

► To select the main lighting mode: turn the ring up/down to the desired position.

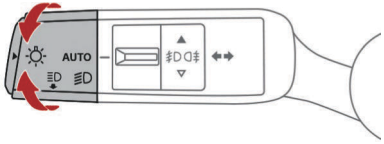


Sidelights only

AUTO Automatic illumination of lights/daytime running lights

Dipped or main beam headlights

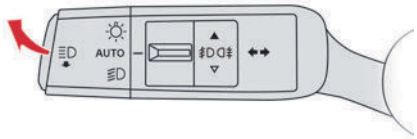
(Depending on version)



AUTO Automatic illumination of lights/ daytime running lights/Sidelights

Dipped or main beam headlights

Headlight dipping



► Pull the lighting control stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlights.

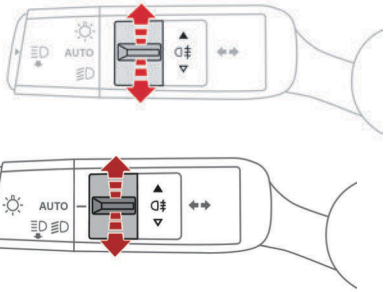
Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator light on the instrument panel confirms that the selected lighting is on.

A fault with a light is signaled by the permanent illumination of this warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Rear fog lights

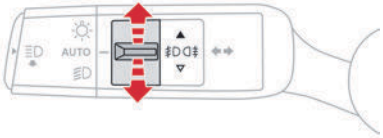
They only work if the dipped or main beam headlights are on.

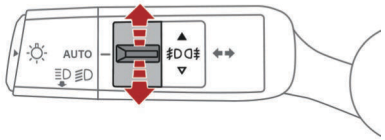


► Push the selector up/down to turn them on/ off.

The selector automatically returns to its initial position.
When the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position) the foglights remain on.

Front foglights and rear foglight







- Push the selector:
  - up a 1st time to switch on the front foglights.
  - up a 2nd time to switch on the rear foglight.
  - down a 1st time to switch off the rear foglight.
  - down a 2nd time to switch off the front foglights.

The selector automatically returns to its initial position.
When the lights are switched off automatically (with "**AUTO**" position) or when the dipped beam headlights are switched off manually, the foglights and sidelights remain on.

- Push the selector down to switch the foglights off; the sidelights will then switch off.

Warning
Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country). Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Tip
Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition. To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring, to the **"AUTO"** position, then to the desired position. They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the level of charge in the battery (entering energy economy mode).

Tip
Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off. When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guideme- home lighting is activated.

Tip
In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlights and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lights have been on for a few minutes.

Warning
Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!



Tip
Travelling abroad. If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers.
Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

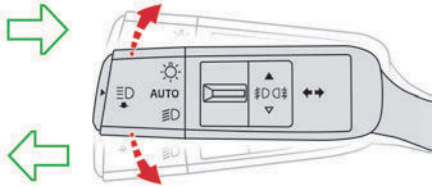
Daytime running lights/ Sidelights

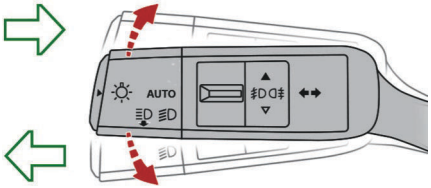
These lights at the front and rear of the vehicle light up automatically when the engine starts. They perform the following functions:

- Daytime running lights (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with adequate ambient light).
- Sidelights (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with low ambient light or "Sidelights only" or "Dipped/main beam headlights").

Tip
In daytime running lamps mode, the light-emitting diodes are brighter.

Direction indicators





► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

Tip
If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Parking Lights

(Depending on version)
When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated by the following procedure:

► Switch off the ignition, and
► Move the lighting control stalk fully upward to activate the right parking lights, or
► Move the lighting control stalk fully downward to activate the left parking lights

Activation is confirmed by the corresponding direction indicator on the instrument panel (Sound and Tell-Tale), which turns off automatically when locking the doors or after a few minutes.

NOTE:

The parking lights stay on, until ignition will be switched on again. To avoid battery drainage, do not use them for an extended period.

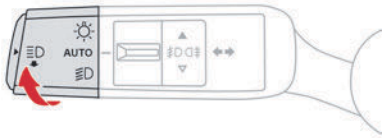
Triple flash function

► Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Automatic illumination of lights

With the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and if a low level of exterior brightness is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the number plate lights, sidelights and dipped beam headlights are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver.
They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windshield wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windshield wipers are switched off, the lights are switched off automatically.

Switching on/off



► To activate it, turn the ring to the "**AUTO**" position.
► To deactivate it, turn the ring to any other position.

When the function is activated or deactivated, a message is displayed (depending on version).

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the rain/ sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lights come on and this warning light is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Tip
In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. For this reason, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Tip
The inner surface of the windscreen may become misted up and affect the proper operation of the rain/sunshine sensor. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

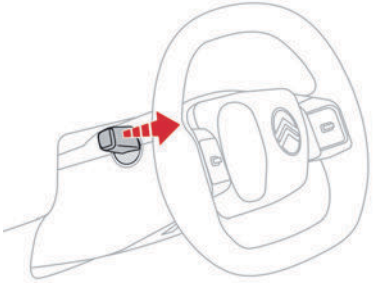
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and when the light is poor, the sidelights and dipped beam headlights come on automatically when the ignition is switched off. You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration via the instrument panel, using the steering-mounted controls.

Manual



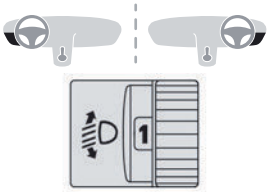
► With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlight flash") to activate/deactivate the function.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome lighting

With the "Automatic headlight illumination" function activated, in poor light, the sidelights and dipped beam headlights come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked. Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Headlight beam height adjustment



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the headlight beams must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0	**(Initial setting)** Driver only or driver + front passenger
1	5 to 7 people
2	5 to 7 people + load in the boot
3	Driver only + load in the boot
4 5 6	Not used

This information is provided as a guide only. Depending on version, the unused positions may be required.

Automatic lighting system - General recommendations

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windshield.

Tip

Operating limits

The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:

- When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
- If the windscreen is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.

The system is not able to detect:

- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Warning

Maintenance.

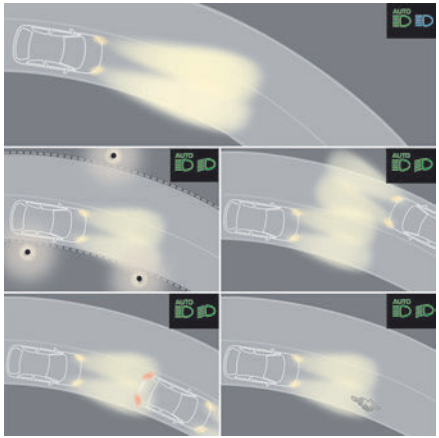
Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.

The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

Automatic headlight dipping

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems.**

Available only on versions equipped with LED technology headlights.
With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlights, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windshield.



Warning
This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

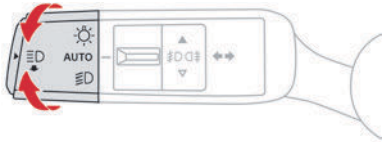
Tip
The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 28 mph (45 km/h). When the speed falls below 22 mph (35 km/h), the system is no longer operational.

Activation/deactivation

Make sure that the lighting control stalk is on "AUTO" position.

Depending of the version the settings are changed via the panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

Tip
When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.



Operation

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:



- The main beam headlights come on automatically. These indicator lights light up on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlights to be lit:



- The dipped beam headlights remain lit. These indicator lights light up on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the foglights are switched on or if the system detects poor visibility conditions (e.g. fog, heavy rain, snowfall).
When the foglights are switched off or when the visibility conditions become favorable again, the function is automatically reactivated.

AUTO This indicator light goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause
If the situation requires a change of headlight beam, the driver can take over at any time.

▶ Switch the headlights manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function.
If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lights were on, the system changes to main beam.

If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lights were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

▶ To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlights manually between dipped and main beam.

Malfunction

AUTO If a malfunction occurs with the system or the camera, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

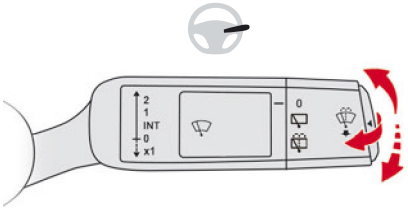
Wiper control stalk

Tip
Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen and around the wiper arms and blades.

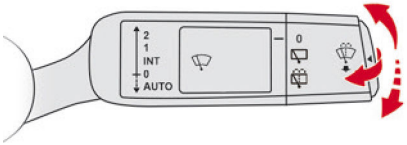
Warning
Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Tip
After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windshield wipers

▶ To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
Int	Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)
0	Switching off
x 1	Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO	Automatic wiping

Refer to the corresponding section.

Single wipe

► With AUTO wiping version, pull the wiper control stalk briefly towards you without going beyond the point of resistance.

Windshield washer

► Pull and hold the wiper control stalk towards you beyond the point of resistance.

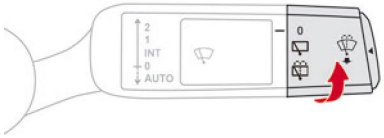
A final wiping cycle is performed when windshield washing ends.

Tip
The windscreen wash jets are incorporated into the tip of each wiper arm. An additional jet is installed below the midpoint of the arm on the driver's side. Screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces screenwash fluid consumption.

Tip
The screenwash jets are not adjustable. Do not handle them (risk of damage).

Warning
To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

Rear wiper



► Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.



Off



Intermittent wiping



Rear screen washer and wiper

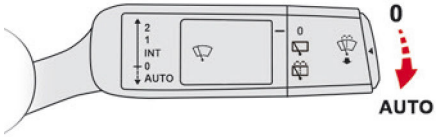
Automatic windshield wiper

In **AUTO** mode, the windshield wipers operate automatically and adapt to the intensity of the rainfall.
Detection is via a rain/brightness sensor, located at the top center of the windshield behind the rear view mirror.

Warning
Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor. When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.

In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Switching on



► Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.



Depending on version, this indicator light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

► Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or set the control stalk to another position (**Int**, **1** or **2**).



Depending on version, this indicator light goes off on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Tip
If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

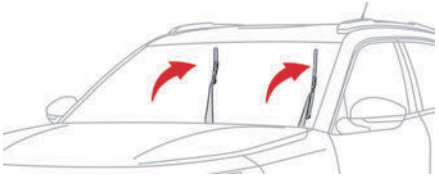
Special position of the windshield wipers

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windshield.

Tip
To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care
- clean them regularly using soapy water
- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen
- replace them at the first signs of wear

Before removing a windshield wiper blade



Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.

▶ Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windshield wiper blade

▶ To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



▶ Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.

▶ Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

Warning
Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.
Do not release them while moving them.
Risk of damaging the windscreen!

▶ Clean the windscreen using washer fluid.

Tip
Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

▶ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.

▶ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.

▶ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.

▶ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

▶ Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

▶ Clean the rear screen using windshield washer fluid.

▶ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.

▶ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.

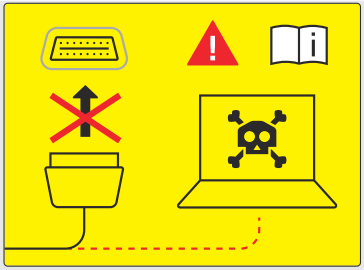
▶ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

General safety recommendations

Warning
Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle.
They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

Warning
Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

Warning
Installing electrical accessories. The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.

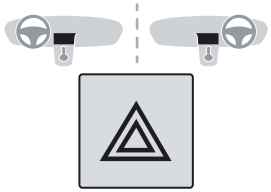


As a safety measure, access to the **diagnostic socket**, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

Warning
Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters. Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the UN ECE Regulation 10.

Tip
Declarations of conformity for radio equipment. The relevant certificates are available on the brand website: http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/

Hazard warning lights



► Pressing this red button causes all the direction indicators to flash.

They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lights come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Horn



► Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Pedestrian horn (MHEV or BEV)

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching (BEV), or when driving in fully electric mode (MHEV).
The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear.
This function cannot be deactivated.

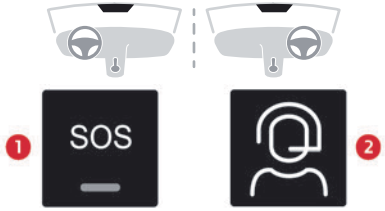
Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency or assistance call



1. eCall (SOS)
2. ASSISTANCE

eCall (SOS)

Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option.
The eCall (SOS) system provides direct contact to the emergency services and is fully built into the vehicle. This contact is made either automatically via the sensors built into the vehicle, or by pressing button **(1)**.
According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, etc.
The eCall (SOS) system is activated by default.

► To make an emergency call manually, press button **(1)** for more than 2 seconds.

The lit indicator light and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services[2].
The eCall (SOS) system immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services[3].

► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

The indicator light flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

Warning
In the event that a serious accident is detected by the sensors built into the vehicle, such as the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically.

Tip
The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free of charge.

Operation of the system

- Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator light illuminates red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
- The indicator light flashes red: replace the back-up battery.
- The indicator light is fixed red: system malfunction. The emergency and assistance call services may not work.

2 In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations
3 Depending on the geographic coverage provided by the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

- If the indicator light does not come on when the ignition is switched on, this also means that there is a system malfunction.

If the problem persists, contact a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Tip
A system malfunction does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Tip
When an onboard system update is being performed, the eCall (SOS) function is not available.

Tip
Data processing. All processing of personal data by the eCall (SOS) function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (General Data Protection Regulation - GDPR) or by UK GDPR (Data Protection, Privacy and Electronic Communications) Regulations 2019 and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6 (1) d) GDPR.
The processing of personal data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the eCall (SOS) function used with the "112" single European emergency call number.
The eCall (SOS) function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.

Tip
Data storage. Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Tip
Access to data. You have the right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or restriction of processing of any personal data not processed in accordance with the provisions of GDPR. Third parties to which data has been disclosed shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in compliance with the corresponding GDPR, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the respective data protection supervisory authority.
If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at: privacyrights@stellantis.com.
For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on the brand's website.

ASSISTANCE

- If the vehicle breaks down, press button **(2)** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message[4]).
- Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

Tip
Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and CITROËN.
It can be configured via the instrument panel.

[4] Depending on the geographic coverage of the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Tip
If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, you are invited to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it as required. In a multilingual country, services can be configured to use the official national language of your choice.

Tip
For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of telematics services provided to customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematics system at any time.

Tip
If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Event Data Recording system

(Depending on country of sale)
This vehicle is fitted with an accident data recording system, also called Event Data Recorder (EDR).
This system gathers and records certain vehicle data over a short period (a few seconds) before, during and after an event such as an accident or collision.
In order to gain a better understanding of the circumstances surrounding the event, this system records how the vehicle's various systems are operating at the time of the event, including:

- Any deployment of a restraint system (e.g. airbag, seat belt).
- The status of the seat belts of all the occupants (fastened/unfastened).
- The contact or intensity of pressure exerted on the pedal(s) engaged by the driver.
- The speed of the vehicle.
- The status of some driving and manoeuvring aids systems.

The following are not recorded by the system:

- Data on normal driving conditions, in other words data not directly related to the event.
- Personal data on the driver and any other occupants.
- The geographical location of the vehicle at the time of the event.

The reading of data recorded by the system requires the following:

- Access to the interior of the vehicle or to the system.

And

- Special equipment that can be purchased from the manufacturer BOSCH (www.BoschCDRTool.com).

Aside from the vehicle Manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement agencies may access this data in order to analyse the event.

Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.

Electronic stability control (ESC) 5

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)/Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.

► **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

Tip
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.



The fixed illumination of this warning light signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lights, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

Warning
After an impact. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.



These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning light flashing on the instrument panel).

Deactivation / Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.



The settings are changed via the Driving/ Vehicle touch screen menu.

Deactivation/reactivation is confirmed by the display of a message.

▶ Depending on equipment level, the system can be deactivated via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
ASR/DSC. These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by dealers.
In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of

snow or all-season tyres is recommended.
All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for your vehicle.
All tyre specifications are listed on the tyre/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Seat belts

Inertia reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

Force limiting system

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Warning
In the event of an impact. Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts

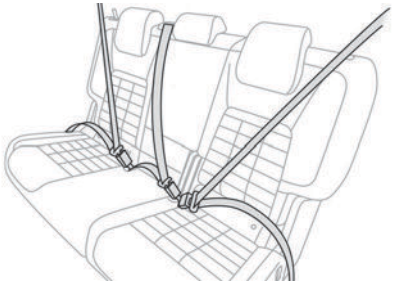


Each of the front seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

Rear seat belts



5-seater version



7-seater version

Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

Third-row rear seat belts (7 seater)



The third-row seats have a seat belt with inertia reel.

Fastening

- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue into the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling on the strap.

Unfastening

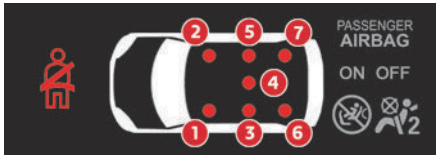
- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened alerts





5-seater version



7-seater version

1. Front left seat belt warning light
2. Front right seat belt warning light
3. Second row left seat belt warning light
4. Second row center seat belt warning light
5. Second row right seat belt warning light
6. Third row left seat belt warning light (7 seater)
7. Third row right seat belt warning light (7 seater)

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened identification warning lights

The red warning lights (**1** to **5** or **7**) indicate the location of the seat belts which are not fastened or have been unfastened.
If the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened, when the ignition is switched on, the seat belts warning light comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning light (**1** to **5** or **7**) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lights display.

Tip
If a rear seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding warning lamp (**3** to **5** or **7**) comes on for around 1 minute.

Above about 12 mph (20 km/h) and for 2 minutes, each warning light corresponding to an occupied seat whose seat belt is unfastened flashes, accompanied by an audible signal. After these 2 minutes, the corresponding seat warning light remains on until the driver or the front/rear passenger fasten their seat belt.

Advice

Warning
The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off. Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys. Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly. To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly. After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Warning

Installation. The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
– be tightened as close to the body as possible.
– be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
– must only be used to secure one person.
– must not show signs of tearing or fraying.
– must not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

Warning

Recommendations for children.

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning

Maintenance. In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

Airbags

General information

This system is designed to improve the safety of the occupants of the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of a violent collision.
The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.
Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
- In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.

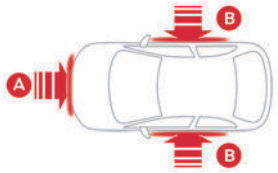
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

Warning

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones



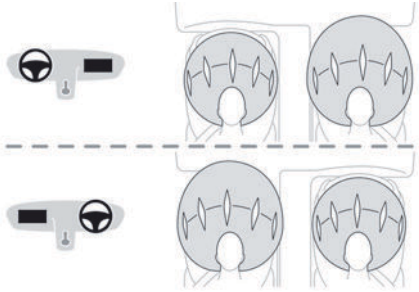
A. Front impact zone

B. Side impact zone

Tip

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

They are deployed, except for the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated[5], in the event of a violent front impact applied to all or part of front impact zone **(A)**.
The front airbag inflates between the chest and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, on the driver's side, and the dashboard, on the passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Lateral airbags

This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **(B)**.
The lateral airbag inflates between the chest of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Curtain airbags

This system helps provide greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear center passenger) in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **(B)** .
The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Warning
In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

Warning

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position. Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.
Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.

[5] For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Front airbags. Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Warning
Lateral airbags. Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags! All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning

Curtain airbags.

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as these help to secure the curtain airbags.

Child seats

Tip
The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than 1.5 metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their size or weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats**.
- **Children ageing less than 15 months must travel in the "rearward facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle**.

Tip
It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:

- **'rearward facing'** up to the age of 3,
- **'forward facing'** over the age of 3.

Warning
Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Warning
An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened

correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Warning

Installing a booster seat.

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

Warning

Additional protections.

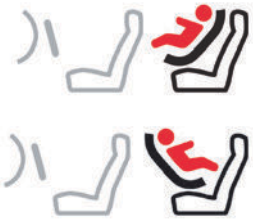
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety measure, do not leave:

- A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
- A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
- The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

Forward-facing or rearward-facing



▶ Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

▶ Check that the backrest of the forwardfacing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

Center rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **center rear passenger seat**.

Child seat at the front



▶ Adjust the front passenger seat to the **maximum rear longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened**.

Forward-facing



Warning
You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

Rearward-facing

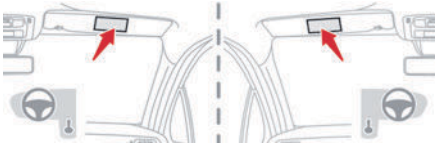


Warning
The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a "rearward

facing" child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.**



Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

Danger
NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
DE: Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG geschützt ist, da dies den TOD oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN DES KINDES zur Folge haben kann.
FR: NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'infliger des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.
ES: NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.
IT: Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all'indietro su un sedile protetto da AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESIONI GRAVI per il BAMBINO!

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



Passenger airbag OFF

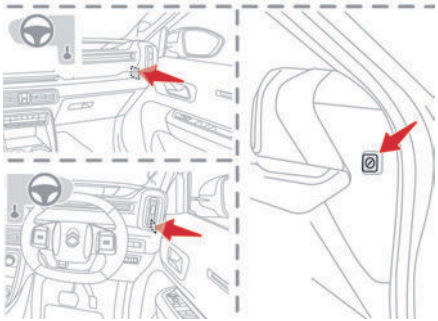
Warning
To ensure the safety of the child, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated when a "rearward-facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed in the event of deployment of the airbag.

Warning
Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control.
Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the switch is located on the side of the dashboard.





With the ignition off:

- To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.
- To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

When the ignition is switched on:

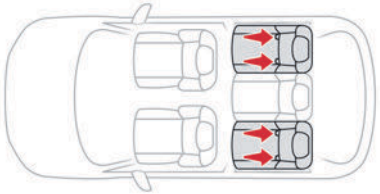
This warning light comes on and remains lit to signal deactivation.

Or

This warning light comes on and remains lit to signal activation.

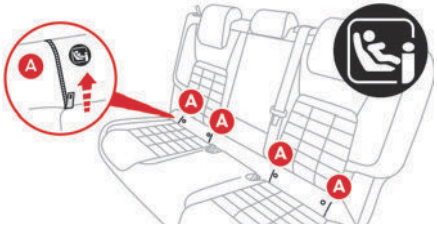
"ISOFIX" mountings

The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



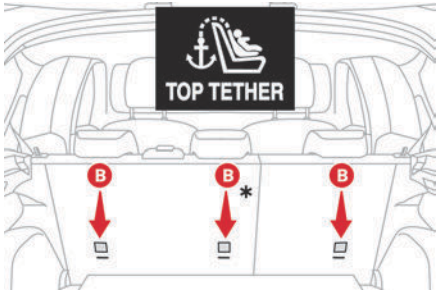
The mountings comprise three rings for each seat, indicated by a marking:

- Two rings **(A)**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.

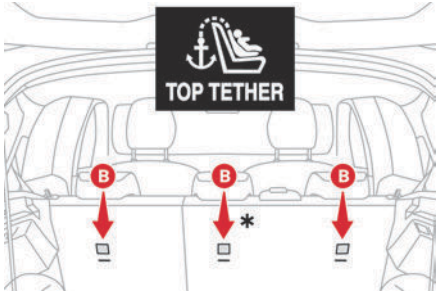


These rings are located behind zips.
The 2 latches on **ISOFIX** child seats are secured to them.

- One ring **(B)**, located behind the seat, called the **TOP TETHER**, for attaching seats fitted with an upper strap.



5-seater version



7-seater version

* Depending on country of sale.

This system prevents the child seat from tipping forwards in the event of a frontal impact.
This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.
To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ▶ Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).
- ▶ Pass the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods.
- ▶ Secure the upper strap hook to ring **(B)**.
- ▶ Tighten the upper strap.

Tip
When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

Warning
An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

Tip
For information about the options for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that are anchored to the two rings **(A)**.
These i-Size child seats also have:

- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **(B)**.
- or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.

Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.
For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Recommended child seats

"RÖMER Baby-Safe 3 i-Size"
Size: 40 - 83 cm



From birth to 15 months

(up to 13 kg)
With or without its ISOFIX base.
Suitable for "rearward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER TriFix 2 i-Size"

Size: 76 - 105 cm



From 15 months to 4 years

(from 9 to 22 kg)
Installed with ISOFIX and Top Tether mountings.
Suitable for "forward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER KidFix i-Size"

Size: 100 - 150 cm



From 3.5 to 12 years

(from 15 to 36 kg)
Can be installed with or without ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Bought in Stellantis & You, Sales and Services

We recommend using child seat with the backrest. If the backrest is removed for child over 138 cm, the secure guard must also be removed.

Tip
Please follow the child restraint manufacturers' instructions for installing the appropriate child restraint in the vehicle.

Tip
For the semi-universal or vehicle-specific child restraint (ISOFIX or belt-type child restraint), refer to the list of vehicles provided in the child restraint user manual.

Tip
Ensure that the installation location of the child restraint system inside the vehicle is correct.
Refer to the summary table for the installation of child seats.

Summary table for installation of universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats.

In compliance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.

	Seat numbers							
	Front seats (b)			**Rear seats (b) row 2**			**Rear seats (b) row 3[6]**	
	**1**	**3**		**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**9**
	**3**	**1**		**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**9**
Front passenger airbag		**Deactivated "OFF" (c)**	**Activated "ON" (d)**					
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	yes **(e) (h)**	no	yes **(e)**	yes **(e) (l)**	yes **(e)**	-	-
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	yes **(f) (h)**	yes **(f)**	yes **(f) (i)**	yes **(f)**	-	-	-
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes	-	-
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes	-	-
Position equipped with a **Top Tether** hook	no	no		yes	no	yes	-	-
"**Carry-cot**" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no		L2 **(g)**	no	L1 **(g)**	-	-

6 Information not available at the time of publication.

	Seat numbers						
	Front seats (b)		Rear seats (b) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3[6]	
	1	3	4	5	6	7	9
	3	1	4	5	6	7	9
Front passenger airbag		**Deactivated "OFF" (c)** / **Activated "ON" (d)**					
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no	R3 **(k)**	no	R3 **(k)**	-	-
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no	F3 **(k)**	no	F3 **(k)**	-	-
"Booster" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	B3 **(h) (l)**	B3 **(k)**	B3 **(i) (j) (k) (l)**	B3 **(k)**	-	-

6 Information not available at the time of publication.

Rules:

- A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible for **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**, **B2**.
- A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2**.
- A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible for **R1**.
- A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2**.
- A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible for **B2**.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

(c) To install a "**rearward facing**" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag MUST be deactivated ("**OFF**").

(d) Only a "**forward facing**" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated ("ON").

(e) For a "**rearward facing**" and/or "**forward facing**" universal child seat (**U**) in groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3** or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

(f) For a "**forward facing**" universal child seat (**UF**) in groups **1**, **2** or **3** or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

(g) If a lateral facing child restraint system is installed on the outer seat of the 2nd row, the use of the other seating positions in this row is excluded.

(h) The vehicle seat must be adjusted in the rearmost longitudinal position.

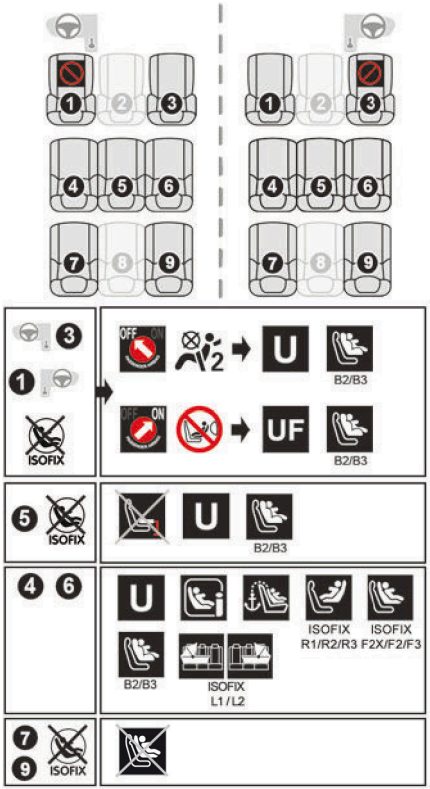
(i) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the center rear passenger seat.

(j) If a booster child restraint system is installed on the center rear passenger seat, the left seating position **4** must not be occupied.

(k) Adjust the head restraint to the maximum height position or remove if necessary.

(l) Seat not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.

Child seat label



Key

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

Information not communicated.

Front passenger airbag **deactivated** and associated warning light.

Front passenger airbag **activated** and associated warning light.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved** "**rearward facing**" and/or "**forward facing**" (**U**) for groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved** "**forward facing**" (**UF**) for groups **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

Seat position authorised for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.

Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat with support leg.

Seat position authorised for the installation of a "forward facing" **i-Size** child seat.

Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of an **universal ISOFIX child seat**.

Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of a "**forward facing**" **universal ISOFIX child seat**.

"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX large size** child seat.

Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers**.
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full heigh**t child seat.

Booster child seat, using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster** seat.
- **B3: full width booster** seat.

ISOFIX "**carrycot**" type child seat:

- **L1**: left-hand facing.
- **L2**: right-hand facing.

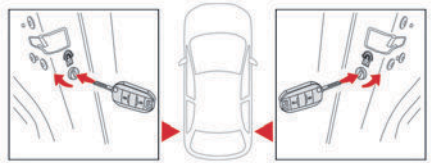
For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table "**Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats**".

Seat position not suitable for "Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat.

Manual child lock

The system prevents a rear door from being opened using its interior handle.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door (indicated by a marking on the bodywork).

Activation/deactivation



▶ To activate, turn the built-in key fully:

- ▶ To the right on the left-hand rear door.
- ▶ To the left on the right-hand rear door.

▶ To deactivate, turn the built-in key in the opposite direction.

Driving recommendations

- Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
- During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

Important!

Warning
Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation. Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide.
Danger of poisoning and death!

Warning
In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

Warning
Never drive with the parking brake applied. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

Warning
Never park the vehicle and never leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves). The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

Warning
Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (e.g. tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge. This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust system or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!

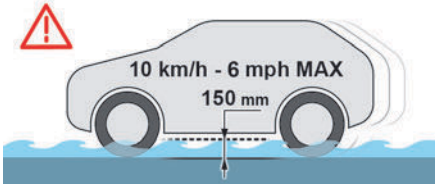
Warning
Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

Warning
Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox or drive selector into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on version).

Warning
Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to your vehicle's electrical systems.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:

- Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
- Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
- Drive as slowly as possible without stalling.

In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).

- Do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.

If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Noise (BEV)

On the outside

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention. When manoeuvring, the driver must always check the vehicle's immediate surroundings. At speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), the pedestrian horn warns other road users of the vehicle's presence.

Tip
Cooling the traction battery. The cooling fan comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

On the inside

During use, you may hear certain perfectly normal noises specific to electric vehicles, such as:

- Traction battery relay when starting.
- Vacuum pump when braking.
- Vehicle tyres or aerodynamics when driving.
- Jolting and knocking noise during hill starts.

Towing

Warning
Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

Tip
Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.
At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

Warning
New vehicle: do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

Tip
If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

▶ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are located as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted, without exceeding it.

Tyres

▶ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

▶ Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

Tip
If a genuine CITROËN towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid activating the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.

▶ Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.

▶ Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.



If this warning light and the **STOP** warning light come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

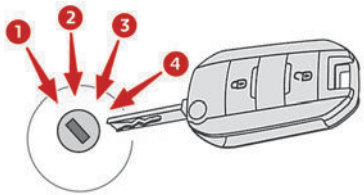
Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The keys contain a code, which must be recognised by the vehicle before starting is possible.
If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a CITROËN dealer.

Starting/Switching off the engine

Key ignition switch



It has four positions:

1. **Stop**

   Inserting and removing the key, steering column locked.

2. **Accessories**

   Steering column unlocked, use of the vehicle's electric equipment.

3. **Ignition**

   Steering column unlocked, ignition on, engine running.

4. **Starting**

Tip
Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control. It would weigh down on its shaft in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or the charging of accessories. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode. The power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

Power button



Engine start

▶ Operate the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.

Ignition on power mode without starting the engine

▶ Press **Start/Stop** without operating the brake pedal. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine and ignition off

▶ Press **Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened.

Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied:

▶ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.

▶ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** or **P** then depress the brake pedal.

▶ Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.

▶ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

Tip
In certain cases, you may need to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (e.g. wheels turned to full lock).

▶ With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **(4)** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine has started, release the key and allow it to return to position **(3)** .

Tip
Petrol engines. After a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

Tip
Hybrid engines. The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
After a few moments, the petrol engine may stop if the operating conditions allow (state of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, torque demand, selected driving mode).

Tip
In mild conditions, do not leave the engine to warm up while stationary, but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Warning
If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after a few attempts, do not keep trying - risk of damaging the starter motor and the engine! Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Switching off the engine

► Immobilise the vehicle.

► With the engine at idle, turn the key to position **(2)** .

► With the ignition switched off, turn the key to position **(1)** , then remove the key from the ignition switch.

► To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

Tip
To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

Warning
Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

Tip
Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.
When leaving the vehicle, keep the key in your possession and lock the vehicle.

Starting/Switching off electric vehicles (BEV)

Starting

The drive selector must be in mode **P**.

► If using a conventional or remote control key, depress the brake pedal and turn the key to position **(4)** until the motor starts, without depressing the accelerator. As soon as the motor starts, release the key so it returns to position **(3)** .

► Keep your foot on the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator light comes on and an audible signal is emitted, indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive.

► With your foot on the brake, select mode **D** or **R**.

► Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.

On starting, the instrument panel goes on and the power indicator cursor moves to the "neutral" position. The steering column automatically unlocks (you may hear a sound and feel the steering wheel move).

Switching off

► If using a conventional or remote control key, turn the key fully to position **(1 . Stop)**.

Before exiting the vehicle, check that:

- The drive selector is in mode **P**.
- The **READY** indicator light is off.

Tip
If the driver's door is opened while the required conditions for switching off are not met, an audible signal is emitted, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

Energy economy mode

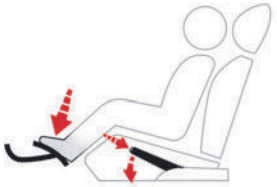
After the engine has stopped (position **1. Stop**), for a maximum combined duration of 30 minutes, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, courtesy lights or dipped beam headlights.

Tip
For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
Key left in. When the driver's door is opened, a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, if the key has been left in the ignition switch in position **1 (Stop).**
If the key has been left in the ignition switch in position **3**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1**, then back to position **3**.

Manual parking brake

Release



► Pull the parking brake lever up slightly, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.

When driving the vehicle, if this warning light and the **STOP** warning light come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message, this means that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

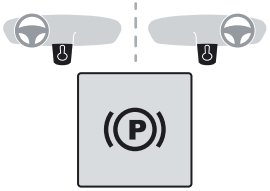
Application

► Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilize the vehicle.

Warning
When parking on a slope, turn the wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

Electric parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.



At any time, with the engine running:

► To apply the parking brake, briefly pull the control.

► To release it, briefly push the control while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic mode is activated by default.
This automatic operation can be deactivated in certain situations.

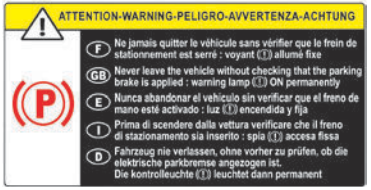
Warning
The driver must apply the electric parking brake when the vehicle is stationary.

Indicator light

This indicator light comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied, accompanied by display of the message "**Parking brake applied**".

The indicator light goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by the display of the message "**Parking brake released**".
The indicator light flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

Warning
In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.
As a safety mesure, with an automatic gearbox or drive selector, it the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chock against one of the wheels.
Contact a CITROEN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Warning
Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lights on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

Warning
Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

Warning
When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing. With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.
When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:

- ▶ Press the brake pedal.
- ▶ While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control.

Tip
If the brake pedal is not depressed, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- ▶ Briefly pull the control.

The control indicator light flashes to confirm the application request

Automatic operation

Automatic release

First ensure that the engine is running and that the driver's door is closed.

The electric parking brake gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off.

With an automatic gearbox

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Select mode **D**, **L** or **R**.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

With a drive selector

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Select mode **D**, **C** or **R**.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

Tip
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are properly closed.

Warning
When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.

Warning
It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

Tip
In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

Special cases

Immobilising the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

Warning
In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended.
To immobilise the vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

Tip
With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, if you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- Start the engine.
- Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
- Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- Push the control for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
- Release the control.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Pull the control for 2 seconds.



This indicator light on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

- Release the control and the brake pedal.

From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.

- Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator light on the instrument panel going out).

Emergency braking

Warning
The emergency braking should only be used in exceptional situations (e.g. brake pedal failure, driver unwell, assisted driving).

In this context, the vehicle can be braked by sustained pulling on the electric parking brake control. Braking continues for as long as the control is kept pulled, and ceases when the control is released.
The ABS and DSC systems stabilise the vehicle during emergency braking.
If emergency braking malfunctions, the message "**Parking brake fault**" will be displayed on the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, indicated by lighting one or both warning lights on the instrument panel, the vehicle's stability is no longer ensured.

- In this case, ensure the vehicle's stability by successive and repeated "pull-release" actions on the electric parking brake control until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



- Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear selector to the left, then forwards.

Warning
Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

Tip
As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:
– Always select neutral.

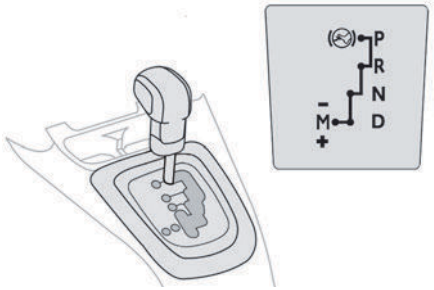
– Press the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox (EAT6)

6-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.
Two driving modes are available:

- **Automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox.
- **Manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selector module



P. Park

- Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied or released.
- Engine starting.

R. Reverse

- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral

- Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied.
- Engine starting.

D. Automatic operation

M. +/- Manual operation

▶ To shift up/down through the gears, push the control backwards/forwards.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



When a position is selected in the grid with the gear selector, the corresponding indicator light illuminates on the instrument panel.

P. Park

R. Reverse

N. Neutral

D. Drive (automatic operation)

M1...6. Gear engaged during manual operation

-. Instruction not accepted during manual operation

Foot on the brake



▶ Depress the brake pedal when this warning light is displayed on the instrument panel (e.g. when starting the engine).

Starting the vehicle

▶ Apply the parking brake.



▶ With your foot on the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N**.

▶ Start the engine.

If the conditions are not met, you will hear an audible signal, accompanied by the display of a message.

▶ With the engine running, depress the brake pedal.
▶ Release the parking brake.
▶ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
▶ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

Tip
If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

Warning
When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R, D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off even without the accelerator being pressed.
Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.
Do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Automatic operation

▶ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Warning
Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Manual operation

Restriction
To limit fuel consumption during an extended standstill with the engine running (for example, in a traffic jam), set the gear selector to **N** and apply the parking brake.

▶ Selecting position **M** enables **sequential shifting** between the six gears.

▶ To shift up/down through the gears, push the control backwards/forwards.

The gearbox only changes gear if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions allow; otherwise, the rules for automatic operation are temporarily applied.
D disappears, and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.
If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually engaged is shown.
It is possible to change from position **D** to position **M** at any time.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

Switching off the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, it is possible to engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

Tip
If the gear selector is not in position **P,** when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears on the instrument panel.

- Return the gear selector to **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light comes on accompanied by an audible signal and a message is displayed, when the ignition is switched on.

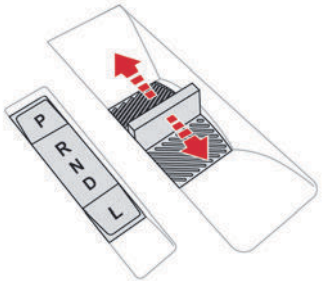
In this case, the gearbox goes into back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a significant jolt (without risk to the gearbox) when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**.
Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
There is a risk of damaging the gearbox:
– If the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed simultaneously.
– In the event of a battery failure, forcing the selector from position **P** to another position.

Electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6)

6-speed electrified dual-clutch automatic gearbox with push selector for hybrid vehicles. It includes an electric motor, which improves the performance of the petrol engine, reduces fuel consumption and drives in all-electric.

Push selector



P. Auto Park
Press this button to switch to Parking mode.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.

R. Reverse

N. Neutral
To free-wheel and move the vehicle, with the ignition off.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, ⇨ page142

D. Driving in automatic mode
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
The gearbox also manages braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

L. Driving with increased engine braking
Engine RPM will increase to provide higher engine braking when going downhill

▶ In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:
  ▶ Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
  ▶ Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

▶ In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.

▶ In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.

▶ To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P.	Parking
R.	Reverse
N.	Neutral
D.	Automatic forward gear
L1...6	Low forward gear

However, in all-electric driving, the gear engaged is not indicated.
The state of the gearbox remains displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

Electric motor

The electric motor included in the automatic gearbox, which is used for the first start, provides 12 V power supply via the DC/DC converter and provides electric assistance to the petrol engine.
The electric motor has the following features:

- Provide an additional torque to the gearbox, optimising the performance of the petrol engine.
- Recover the kinetic energy of the deceleration phases, converting it into electrical energy, which can be used for traction or for the power supply of electrical accessories installed on the vehicle.

- Recharge the 48 V traction battery when the 6 state of charge is too low.
- Provide all-electric driving only.

These features are achieved through the following functions set of automatic operating mode:

- e-Boost.
- e-Creeping.
- e-Launch.
- e-Queueing.
- e-Parking.

A manual operating mode is also available to activate/deactivate the restart of the petrol engine while driving: the e-Auto mode.

Tip
When mode **P** or **N** is selected on the automatic gearbox, the noise level in the engine compartment may increase due to the start of the charging phase of the traction battery: this is normal and does not represent a malfunction.

Operation

Only appropriate mode change instructions are validated.
With the engine running, if it is necessary to depress the brake pedal to change modes, an alert message will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Warning
With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

Tip
If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Warning
At speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), opening the driver's door will engage mode **P** - risk of sudden braking!

Warning
In the event of battery failure, it is essential to place the chock(s) supplied with the tool kit against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Special aspects of automatic mode

These functions respond to common driving situations where the electric motor is available to provide additional power or zero-emission driving.

Tip
These functions are only available if the traction battery is sufficiently charged. These five functions cannot be deactivated.

e-Launch

With the petrol engine off, this function allows the vehicle to run in electric mode without affecting performance.
By depressing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle starts to drive as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Creeping

With the petrol engine off, by releasing the brake pedal, this function allows the vehicle to be moved forward or backward in electric mode without having to depress the accelerator pedal, as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Queueing

This function makes it possible to follow a queue of vehicles with several stops followed by restarts of the vehicle, using the e-Creeping, e-Launch and electric driving modes.

e-Parking

This function allows parking manoeuvres to be carried out at reduced speed with the help of the electric motor when the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Boost

This function allows simultaneous operation of the petrol engine and the electric motor, combined with the automatic gearbox.
By fully depressing the accelerator pedal ("kickdown" function), when the traction battery is fully charged, it is possible to exceed the torque of the petrol engine alone, thanks to the additional torque provided by the electric motor.

Tip
Repeated use of the brake pedal causes the restart of petrol engine to provide braking assistance.

Special aspects of low mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.
The petrol engine can also be switched off in low mode when stopped in traffic or when the accelerator pedal is released.

Tip
If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the dashboard button.

Starting the vehicle

- Fully depress the brake pedal.
- Start the petrol engine by depressing the brake pedal until the engine is running at a stabilised engine speed.
- With your foot on the brake pedal, push once or twice backwards to select automatic mode **D**, or forwards to shift into reverse gear **R**.
- Release the brake pedal.
- Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The petrol engine may stop after the first start if operating conditions allow (e.g. state of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, efficiency of the catalytic converter, torque demand, selected driving mode, thermal comfort of the passenger compartment).
Then, the vehicle moves off immediately in fully electric mode (e-Launch function).

Switching the vehicle off

Regardless of the current gearbox mode, mode **P** is immediately engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off.
However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (time to enable freewheeling mode).
Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.



The corresponding indicator lights on the gear selector and the electric parking brake control must be on, as well as the indicator lights on the instrument panel.

Gearbox malfunction



This warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

Switching of the gearbox to back-up mode

Depending on the malfunction, the gearbox only shifts in odd or even gears, locks in one gear or loses some gears.
You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

In the event of a malfunction, an audible warning sounds to indicate that the gearbox should be put into Park mode.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction



This warning light comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
In some cases, the selector indicator lights may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

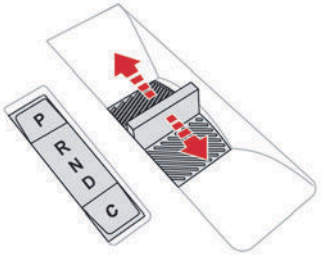
Major malfunction



This warning light comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Warning
You must stop the vehicle. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Drive selector (BEV)



The drive selector is a pulse selector with a regenerative braking function.
The drive selector provides traction control based on the driving style, the road profile and the vehicle load.
With regenerative braking activated, it also manages engine braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

P. Park
Button for parking the vehicle: the front wheels are locked (the button illuminates to indicate that it is activated).

R. Reverse
To engage reverse gear, with your foot on the brake pedal.

N. Neutral
To free-wheel and move the vehicle.

D. Drive (automatic forward gear)

C. Comfort
To reduce engine braking.

Information displayed on the instrument panel
When the ignition is switched on, the drive selector status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P : Park.

R : Reverse.

N : Neutral.

D : Drive (automatic forward gear).

C : Comfort.

Operation

- In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:
  - Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
  - Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

- In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
- In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode R is selected.
- To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Regenerative braking

With the mode C and when decelerating

By default, the regenerative braking is automatically activated in D mode at every engine start. The vehicle slows more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal. The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's range.

Warning
The resulting deceleration of the vehicle does not cause the brake lamps to come on.

The level of regenerative braking can be reduced by activating **C** (comfort) mode

- From **D** mode, press button **C** to enter comfort mode (the button lights up when C is activated)

C is displayed on the instrument panel close to **D**.
The vehicle will still provide regenerative braking and energy recovery, but the levels are less than in **D** mode.
The **C** mode is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Warning
In some situations (e.g. battery full, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration. The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

With the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery.
This energy recovery also reduces use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

Tip
The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

Progressive Hydraulic Cushions

This suspension system with progressive hydraulic cushions improves driving comfort by filtering out the imperfections and demands of the road surface.
Each shock absorber is equipped with a hydraulic compression stop (at the base) and a hydraulic rebound stop (at the top).
Depending on the intensity of the shock to be absorbed, these stops provide the vehicle with a greater freedom of movement or gradually slow down the amount of movement in order to avoid any sudden jolts at the end of travel.
Unlike conventional suspension which absorbs the energy but then partially returns some of it, this active suspension absorbs and dissipates this energy, without producing any rebound.

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine)

This system is designed to reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may recommend skipping one or more gears.
Gear engagement recommendations are not to be considered mandatory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.
The system cannot be deactivated.

Tip
With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.



The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.

Tip
The system adapts the gear change instructions according to the driving conditions (e.g. slope, load) and driving style (e.g. power demand, acceleration, braking).
The system never suggests:
– engaging first gear.
– engaging reverse gear.

Hill start assist

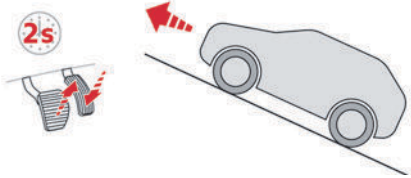
This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
The system is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

Warning
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the electric parking brake control are on fixed.

Warning
The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

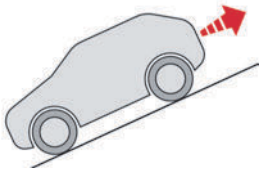
Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:

- If first gear or neutral is engaged on a manual gearbox.
- If mode **D**, **M** or **L** is selected on an automatic gearbox.
- If mode **D** or **C** is selected on the drive selector.





Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Malfunction





If the event of a malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

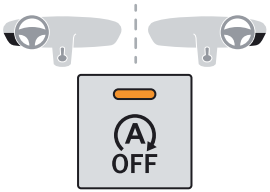
Stop & Start (ICE)

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.

To deactivate/reactivate the function:



► Press the dashboard button.

When the function is deactivated, the orange indicator light is lit; if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

Associated indicator lights



Function activated: engine on standby (STOP mode).



Function deactivated or malfunction.

Warning
Opening the bonnet. Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



Warning
Driving on flooded roads. Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:

- **With a manual gearbox:** when you place the gear lever in neutral and release the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox:** with the gear selector in mode **D** or **M**, when the brake pedal is depressed until the vehicle stops or when the mode **N** is selected, with the vehicle stationary.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases

The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:

- Steep slope (ascending or descending).
- Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start.
- Electric parking brake applied or being applied.
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.
- Braking assistance being used.



In these cases, this indicator light flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Tip
After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

Tip
During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:
With a manual gearbox: when the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

With an automatic gearbox:

- With the selector in mode **D** or **M**: when the brake pedal is released.
- With the selector in mode **N** and the brake pedal released: when the mode **D** or M is selected.
- With the selector in mode **P** and the brake pedal depressed: when the mode **R**, **N**, **D** or **M** is selected.
- When the reverse gear is engaged.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:

- Some specific conditions (braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.).
- With a manual gearbox: vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h).
- With an automatic gearbox, in mode **N**, vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h).



In these cases, this indicator light flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning light flashes for a few moments on the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lights come on if there is a fault.

► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again.

Warning
12 V battery. The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification. All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

e-Auto mode (MHEV)

The petrol engine stops when low power or torque is required and in stabilised conditions. The petrol engine is restarted by the belt starter.

The e-Auto mode can switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:

- When the operating strategies permit.
- Vehicle speed up to 90 mph (145 km/h).
- When the driver releases the accelerator pedal in stabilised conditions or in deceleration.
- During the stop phases.

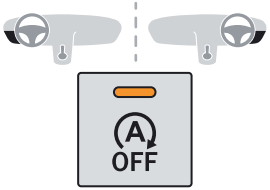
Restarting is only achieved by the belt starter until the torque demand is available, if the traction battery is sufficiently charged. When the torque demand is insufficient, the petrol engine restarts.

The e-Auto mode cannot switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:

- The state of charge is less than 30% of the traction battery energy.
- There is a need for vacuum brake assist depending on the altitude.
- Maintaining thermal comfort in the passenger compartment (heating, air conditioning, demisting/defrosting).

Deactivation/reactivation

By default, the function is activated when the ignition is switched on.
The "**e-Auto OFF**" control on the dashboard activates/deactivates the e-Auto mode.



▶ Press the dashboard button.

The display of a message on the instrument panel confirms the change of state.



Function deactivated, this indicator illuminates in the instrument panel.

Tip
If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the dashboard button.

Tire under-inflation detection

This system alerts the driver if one or more tires suffer a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tire pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialisation request. It is therefore essential that the tyre pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

Warning
The tyre under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens road-holding
- lengthens braking distances
- causes premature wear of the tyres
- increases energy consumption

Tip
The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
Checking tyre pressures. This check should be done monthly when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Tip
Snow chains. The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning light, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Warning
The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tyres when cold.
- If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

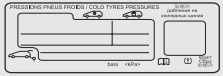
Warning
Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.
The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tyre blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.
The alert may be delayed at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h), or when adopting a dynamic driving style.

Tip
The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tires, and after changing one or more wheels.

Warning
Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label. Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation. The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialised via the instrument panel, using the steering-mounted controls.
The reinitialization is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel.
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
In this case, the tire under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tip
Non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel. The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tyre pressure monitoring.
In this case, the malfunction warning lamp comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.

Driving and maneuvering aids - General recommendations

Tip
Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to

retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.
These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

Tip
Driving aids. You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

Tip
Manoeuvring aids. The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Legal Obligations

In order to comply with European GSR v2 regulations and for safety reasons, these functions cannot be partially or totally deactivated by the driver:

- Speed Limit Information in the Road signs recognition system.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane keeping assist.
- Driver Attention Warning by Camera.
- Parking sensors.

Warning
The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), by the masking of the detection zone with adhesive labels or other objects, or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front or rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).
Take care not to cover the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the associated system.



Warning
Driving aids camera. This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Tip
Other cameras. The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Warning
Parking Sensors. The operation of the parking sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audio signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).

Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre. Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Tip
Maintenance. Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

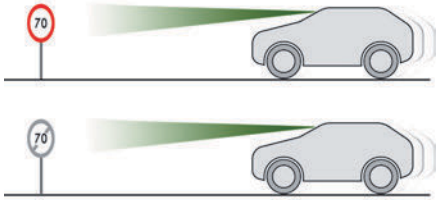
Warning
Mats/Pedal trims. The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

Tip
Units of speed
Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Road signs recognition

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:

- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit information from the connected services.
- Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into a shared traffic zone Example: 	10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units on the instrument panel)

- Some supplementary traffic signs detected by the camera.

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit when raining Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit when towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Examples: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit in case of snow Example: 	If the outside temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol

Tip
To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the

telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.
Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.
This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the connected services.

Warning
The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.

Warning
Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Tip
Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Information displayed on the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication

   or

2. End of speed limit indication (depending on version)



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value, accompanied by an audible signal.

Tip
This audible signal is emitted if the Speed limit change sound is activated previously in the **Road Signs** function of the instrument panel menu.

For a suggested maximum speed, when the vehicle exceeds it, the speed is displayed and flashes for several seconds.



If the vehicle continues to exceed it, the speed is displayed and flashes for a few more seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

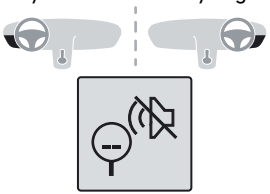
Operating limits

The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:

- Non-standard road signs.
- Road signs that are obstructed, damaged or bent.

Deactivation/activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.
The settings are changed via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.
By default, the overspeed alert sound is automatically activated at every engine start.



Press and hold this dashboard button to deactivate the over speed alert sound. To reactivate a short press is sufficient.

Tip
The system cannot be deactivated.
The speed limit change sound is saved when the ignition is switched off.

In the event of the speed limit change 6 sound deactivation, this warning light illuminates a few seconds on the instrument panel.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**" if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behaviour, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Overspeed alert

(Depending on country of sale)

An audible overspeed alert is triggered when the vehicle exceeds predefined speed threshold.
When the vehicle speed is greater than 75 mph (120 km/h), the alert is emitted every 2 seconds.
Available only for Gulf Countries, when the vehicle speed is greater than 75 mph (120 km/h), the alert is emitted once for 4 seconds.
The visual warning starts when the vehicle speed first exceeds 120 km/h and continues as long as the vehicle speed remains above 120 km/h or decreases from 120 km/h to 118 km/h.

Tip
The system cannot be deactivated.

Speed limiter

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).
The speed limiter is switched on manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).

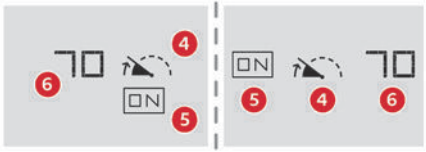
Steering-mounted controls





1. Speed limiter selection/deselection
2. Pause/Reactivate the speed limitation at the previously saved speed setting
3. Increase/Decrease the speed setting
   Activate the speed limitation

Information displayed on the instrument panel



4. Speed limiter mode selection indication
5. Speed limitation on/off indication
6. Speed setting value

Switching on/pausing



► Press twice button **(1-MODE)** to select speed limiter mode; the function is paused.



► If the speed limit setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press one of the buttons **(3)** to switch the speed limiter on.

► Or pressing button **(2)** activates the function.



► Pressing button **(2)** temporarily pauses the function.

► Pressing button **(2)** again resumes the function.

Tip
When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

Adjusting the speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

► For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses upwards/downwards on **(3)** to increase/decrease.

► For steps of +/- 3 mph (5 km/h), press and hold upwards/downwards on **(3)** to increase/decrease.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The speed limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.

► Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.

When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audible signal is triggered immediately.

Warning
On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

When the vehicle speed returns to the speed setting level, the speed limiter operates again: the speed setting display becomes fixed again.

Off

► Press **(1-MODE)**: the speed limiter information display disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control - Specific recommendations

Warning
The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Tip

Exceeding the programmed speed setting.

You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

Warning

Operating limits.

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
- In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using a 'space-saver' type spare wheel.
- When using snow chains or non-slip covers.

Cruise control

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Specific recommendations on cruise control**.

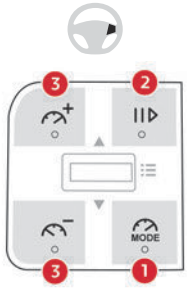
This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control is switched on manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** or **L** must be engaged.
With a drive selector, mode **D** or **C** must be engaged.

Tip
Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

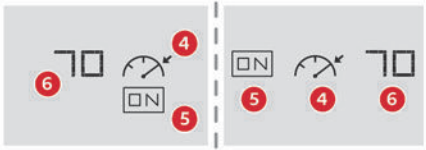
Tip
Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

Steering-mounted controls



1. Cruise control selection/deselection
2. Pause/Reactivate the cruise control at the previously saved speed setting
3. Increase/Decrease the speed setting
   Activation of cruise control in progress

Information displayed on the instrument panel



4. Speed limiter mode selection indication
5. Speed limitation on/off indication
6. Speed setting value

Switching on/pausing



▶ Press once button **1-MODE** briefly to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



▶ Accelerate to the desired speed and then press one of the buttons **3-SET** to activate the cruise control; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.

▶ Release the accelerator pedal.



▶ Pressing button **2-II>** temporarily pauses the function.

▶ Pressing button **2-II>** or one of the buttons **3-SET** again resumes operation of the cruise control at the previously saved speed setting.

Tip
Cruise control operation can also be interrupted temporarily:
– by pressing the brake pedal.
– by depressing the clutch pedal for more 5 seconds (manual gearbox).
– by shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear.
– automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.

Modifying the speed setting

The cruise control must be active.
To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

▶ For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses upwards/downwards on **3** to increase/decrease.

▶ For steps of +/- 3 mph (5 km/h), press and hold upwards/downwards on **3** to increase/decrease.

Warning
Prolonged pressing and holding upwards/downwards on **3** causes a very rapid change in vehicle speed.

Warning
As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Off

▶ Press **1-MODE**: the cruise control information display disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This system:

- warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist.
- reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

Tip
The system also takes motorcyclists into account.
It may also react on animals. Animals (especially animals smaller than 0.5 m) and

objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system includes three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert.
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windshield.

Warning
This system does not replace the need for driver vigilance.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

Tip
As soon as the system detects a potential collision, it prepares the braking circuit.
This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Operating conditions and limits

Vehicle moving forward without trailer.
Brake system operational.
ASR system activated.
Seat belts fastened for driver and front passenger.
Stabilised speed on roads with no or low curvature.

This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel without any additional message, to indicate that the automatic braking system is not available.

This is a normal behaviour indicating that a condition is not fulfilled and which does not require the support of a workshop.
In any situations with ignition on where automatic braking presents a risk, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is recommended, for instance:

- Towing a trailer (particularly a trailer without its own braking system).
- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Driving with snow chains.
- Using an automatic car wash.
- Performing any maintenance (e.g. changing a wheel, working inside the engine compartment).
- Placing the vehicle on a rolling bench in a workshop.
- Towing the vehicle.
- When a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version).
- If the brake lights are not working.
- Following a damage of the windscreen close to the detection camera.

Tip
The system is automatically deactivated when the use of certain types of "space-saver" spare wheel (smaller diameter) is detected, or if a fault with the brake pedal switch or at least two brake lamps is detected.
Following a severe crash (e.g. with airbag deployment), the system is automatically deactivated.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system performance may be degraded or not available by:

- Sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt.
- Windshield damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items (e.g. stickers).
- Front camera out of regular position or missing cover.
- Brake discs cooling process is on-going.
- In curves.
- System initialization process after battery disconnection.
- Sun or lights shining into the front camera lens.
- Adverse environmental conditions (e.g. rain, fog or snow).
- Vehicle ahead creating road spray.

The system performance may be affected by:

- Vehicle stability system in progress.
- Vehicle battery voltage out of range.
- Wet road reflecting lights.
- Close vehicles ahead.
- Tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer.
- Banked roads.
- Winding or hilly roads.
- Poor lighting conditions.
- Sudden lighting changes.
- Vehicle modifications (e.g. tires).

Tip
In case the detection is degraded or temporarily unavailable by environment conditions, then a driver indication is not displayed (because a driver action is not requested).

Warning
It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

Warning
The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW limit and load height limits for roof bars).

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, or with a pedestrian or cyclist.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

The trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.
The selected threshold is memorized when the ignition is switched off.
The threshold is set via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

Operation

Depending on the collision risk detected by the system, an alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel.
The system takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the difference speed of the own vehicle and the object identified for the collision risk, and the operation of the vehicle (e.g. actions on the pedals, steering wheel) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.

With matrix instrument panel



(orange) Visual and audible alert, warning that the preceding vehicle is very close.

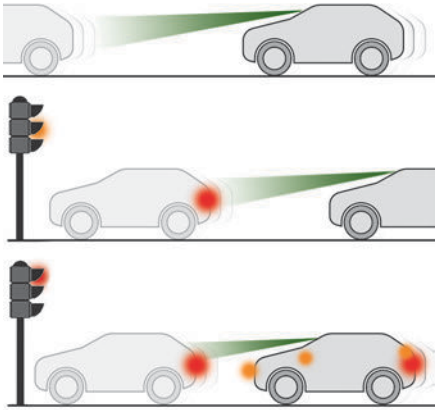
The message "**Obstacle close**" is displayed.

Warning
It is possible that collision warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance (IEBA)

This function increases vehicle deceleration if the driver does not brake enough to avoid a collision.
This assistance is only provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called "automatic emergency braking", intervenes after the acoustic alert if the driver does not operate the brake pedal quickly enough.
The system aims at reducing the speed of impact or avoiding a collision if the driver fails to react.

Tip
Below a speed of 30 mph (50 km/h), automatic emergency braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop.
Automatic emergency braking may reduce the speed by a maximum of 30 mph (50 km/h) speed.

Operation

The system operates subject to the following conditions:

- At reduced speed in an urban environment, when a stationary vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 5 mph and 84 mph (8 km/h and 135 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.



This warning light flashes during the intervention as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.

During the flashing time, the function is not available.
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, in the event of automatic emergency braking, keep the brake pedal depressed, also after a complete stop is reached, to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.
With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

Tip
The driver can override the automatic emergency braking at any time by strongly turning the steering wheel (evasive manoeuvre) and/or by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.

Tip
The brake pedal may feel hard and vibrate slightly while the function is operating.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Deactivation/activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.
The settings are changed via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.



Deactivation of the system is signaled by the illumination of this warning light, accompanied by the display of a message.

Tip
The system cannot be deactivated above 10 km/h.

Malfunction



This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**" if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behaviour, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



If this warning light comes on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.





These warning lights light up on the instrument panel and/or in the warning light display for seat belts and front passenger airbag to indicate that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on version).
The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

Distraction detection

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

The function comprises the "Driver Attention Warning" system combined with the "Driver Attention Warning by Camera" system.

Warning
These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.
Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

These systems reset themselves if one of the following conditions is met:

- The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

Driver Attention Warning

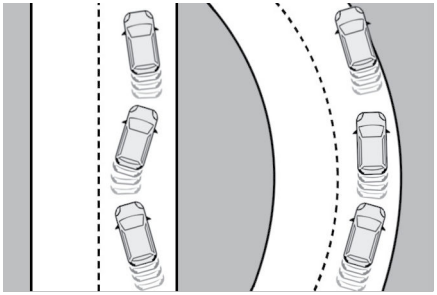
The system triggers an alert when it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

Tip
As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Drowsiness Detection with Front View Camera



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness, fatigue and distraction by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.

To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

Tip
The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring.
During this period, the driver's individual driving behaviour is analysed and no alert is given.

At a first alert level, the driver is warned by the message "**Caution!**", accompanied by an audible signal.
After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Driving at risk: Take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

Tip
In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

Warning
The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- lane positioning assist is active.
- poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall).
- dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light).
- windshield front view camera obstructed (e.g. dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or masked by a sticker).

- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud, dead leaves) or multiple (roadworks).
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected).
- roads that are narrow, winding.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message, illuminates and an audible signal is given.
After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with a message, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal and .

Driver Drowsiness Detection with Driver Monitoring Camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 13 mph (20 km/h).
The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements.
The system does not record any video nor is it capable to identify the driver.
The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking
- microsleep patterns

If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given.
Additionally, illuminates.

If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. micro-sleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by and a more pronounced audio signal.
Drowsiness and micro-sleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

Reinitialization

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialised in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below 40 mph (65 km/h) for a few minutes
- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

Deactivation/Activation
By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.

With Touch screen & Bluetooth Radio & Telephone

The settings are changed via the **Driving** touch screen menu.

With MyCitroën Drive Plus - MyCitroën Play Plus

The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Or
Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.

Fault

Illuminates on the cluster when a fault is detected, accompanied by a message and an audible chime.

Illuminates on the cluster when the audible warning system encounters a fault.
Consult a workshop.

Depending on the message, check that :

- The camera lenses are clean.
- The face monitoring camera is not disturbed by the driver wearing sunglasses.

If the fault cannot be cleared, consult a dealer or qualified workshop.

System limitations

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc. dazzle caused by headlights of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.

- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads
- advanced lane keeping assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

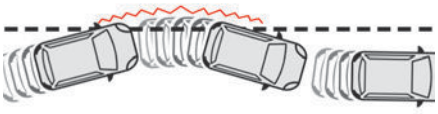
In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- the driver is wearing sunglasses with an infrared transmittance of less than 70%
- the driver monitoring camera is exposed to extremely high temperatures

Lane departure warning

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system, using a camera which recognizes solid or broken lines, detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground.
If the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 40 mph (65 km/h), the system triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Detection



If an unexpected change of direction is detected, this warning light flashes in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is activated and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

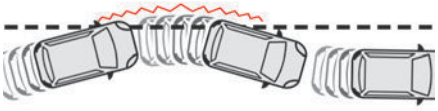
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lane keeping assist

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure.
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Operating conditions

- Vehicle speed between 40 and 111 mph (65 and 180 km/h).
- Road marked with a central dividing line.
- Steering wheel held with both hands.
- Direction indicators off upon activation of the system.
- ESC system activated and operational.

Warning
The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Operation

As soon as the system identifies a risk of involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane boundary (e.g. grass verge), it performs the trajectory correction necessary to restore the vehicle to its original lane.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning light flashes during trajectory correction.

Tip
The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre).
The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.

While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations.
The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Display	Comments
OFF		Function deactivated.
ON	None.	System active, conditions not met: - Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h). - No lane marking recognised. - ESC operation triggered. - Dynamic driving style.
ON		Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle, failure).
ON	None.	Lane marking detected. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of line crossing is detected. The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
ON	  **"Make sure you stay in the lane"**	If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. If a trajectory correction lasts more than 10 seconds, the driver is warned with an audible warning accompanied by a message. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time. If the steering wheel is not held properly, an audible warning sounds, accompanied by a message, until the trajectory correction is completed or the driver has grasped the steering wheel correctly. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
- Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 111 mph (180 km/h).
- Electrical connection to a trailer.
- Use of a "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
- Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Driving over lane markings.
- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Crossing the inside line on a bend.
- Driving on a tight bend.
- Driving on hilly roads.
- Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

Warning
The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- Insufficient contrast between the road surface.
- Lane markings worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud) or multiple (e.g. roadworks).
- Close proximity to the vehicle in front (lane markings may not be detected).
- Roads that are narrow, winding.

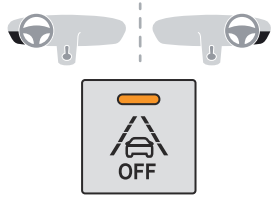
Risk of undesirable operation

The system should be deactivated in the following situations:

- When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
- Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
- Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation/activation

Due to legal requirements, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



► Press and hold this dashboard button to deactivate the system.To reactivate the short press is sufficient.

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of the button indicator light, accompanied by the warning light on the instrument panel.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, the warning light illuminates on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

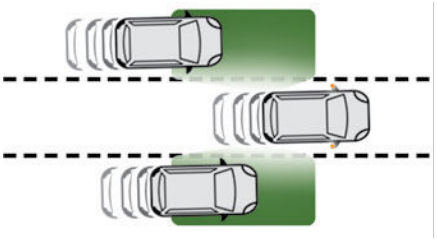


This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**" if the sensor is masked.

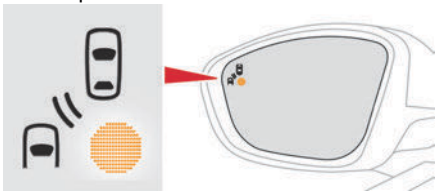
This is a normal behaviour, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Blind spot monitoring

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system warns the driver of a potential danger posed by the presence of another vehicle (car, lorry, motorcycle) in the vehicle's blind spots (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision) using sensors located on the sides of the bumpers.



A warning light appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- **fixed**, immediately, when being overtaken.
- **flashing**, immediately when another vehicle is detected and the direction indicators is used for the respective side.

Activation/deactivation

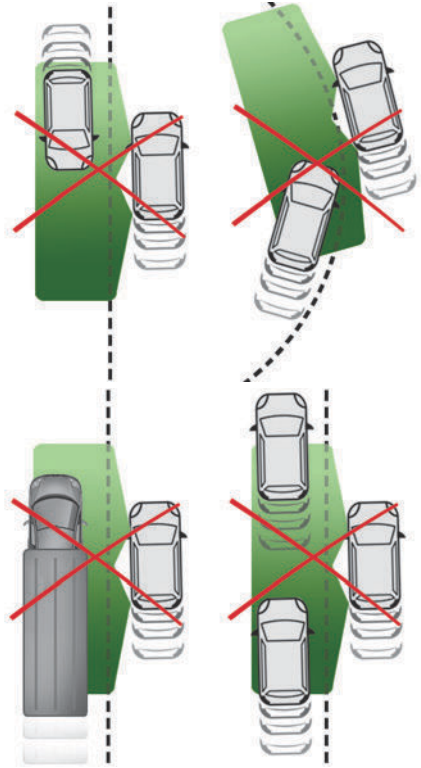
The settings are changed via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.
The status of the system is memorized when the ignition is switched off.

Tip
The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by CITROËN.

Operating conditions

- All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
- The speed of your vehicle must be between 18 and 87 mph (30 and 140 km/h).
- When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
- Traffic is flowing normally.
- Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits



No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

- presence of stationary objects (e.g. parked vehicles, safety rails, lampposts, signs).
- vehicles traveling in the opposite direction.
- on winding roads or in case of sharp turns.

- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (e.g. truck, bus), which is both detected in a blind spot from behind and present in the driver's field of vision from the front.
- quick overtaking maneuver.
- very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

Malfunction



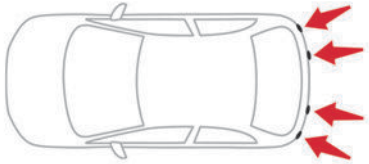
If the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tip
The system may be temporarily disturbed by certain weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, hail or extreme temperature changes).
In particular, driving on a wet road or going from a dry to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on the rear bumper, with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

Parking sensors

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

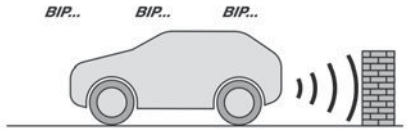


This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

Rear parking sensors

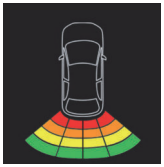
System startup is available when reverse gear is engaged.
It is indicated by an audible confirmation signal and a display indication.
If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles which are within the sensors' detection zone . The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about 40 centimeters, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound is emitted by the buzzer of the instrument panel.

Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen whose location represents the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (green: more distant, yellow: distant, orange: close, red: very close).



This warning light flashes during obstacle detection on the instrument panel.

Tip
For versions without touch screen, only this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel.

Front parking sensors

Supplementing the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is below 6 mph (10 km/h).

Front parking sensor operation is suspended if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Tip
The sound is emitted by the buzzer of the instrument panel.

Deactivation/activation

(Depending on country of sale)
By default, the audible signal is automatically activated at each time the reverse gear is engaged.

Tip
The rear parking sensors are deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.

Operating limits

If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.
In case of a gearbox failure, the system is not active, when the reverse gear is engaged.

Malfunction

Tip
In case of display or buzzer malfunction (e.g. frozen image, black screen), the system may be disturbed or unavailable.

In the event of a sensor malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel, in some versions it is accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

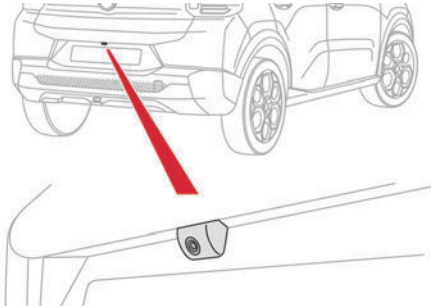
In the event of any other malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, in some versions it is accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tip
If the front/rear sensors are covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing, stop the vehicle. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Reversing camera

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The image is displayed on the touch screen.

Tip
The reversing camera function may be supplemented by the parking sensors.



The horizontal red line represents a distance of about 35 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The horizontal yellow line represents a distance of about 1 meters beyond edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The horizontal green line represents a distance of about 2 meters beyond edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
It is normal to have a part of the number plate showing at the bottom of the screen.

Tip
Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

Compatibility of fuels

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively

Tip
The only petrol fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Traveling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, consult a dealer.

Refueling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 44 liters.

Reserve level: approximately 5 liters.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level is reached, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 5 liters** of fuel remain.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning light appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0.**
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

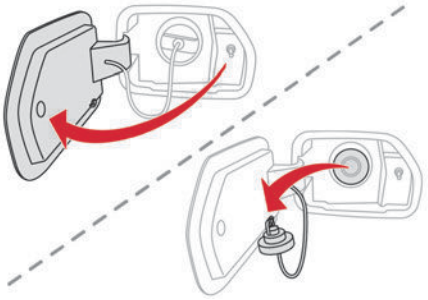
Tip
A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

Warning
Stop & Start (where provided) / e-Auto mode. Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode or in stand-by; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling

When refueling, at least 5 liters must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is normal, caused by the sealing of the fuel system.
To refuel in complete safety:

- Always switch off the engine.



- With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear-central part of the filler flap to open it.
- Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).
- Turn the filler cap to the left, remove it and place it on its support (on the filler flap).
- Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (to minimize the risk of splashing).

Do not continue after the nozzle's third cutout. Doing so may cause malfunctions.

- Put the filler cap back in place and turn it to the right.
- Close the fuel filler flap.

Warning
If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, 7 which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For ICE, you must use unleaded fuel.

Fuel cut-off

The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Electrified vehicles - General recommendations

These recommendations and general information concern electrified vehicles of the type: hybrid and electric.

High-voltage system

Warning
High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.
Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, CITROËN recommends that you:

- Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.
- Never work on the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
- Never damage, modify or remove the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
- Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
- Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.

Warning
In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery.
Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later.
CITROËN recommends that you:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.

Traction battery

Traction battery overheating



If the following warning lights appear, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, it is required to:

- ▶ Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in the best conditions of safety.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.
- ▶ Call the fire department and/or the emergency services and tell them that the vehicle is an electric one.

Warning
Danger of death / Risk of serious injury. A chain reaction can occur up to a traction battery fire.

Warning
In the event of damage to the traction battery. It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.

Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Disposal of the traction battery

The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of CITROËN are followed.
If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the CITROËN dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock and damage to the environment.
In accordance with regulations, CITROËN ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

Hybrid system (MHEV)

Electrical system

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles**.

The electrical circuit of the hybrid system is identified by purple cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



Warning
The hybrid powertrain uses a voltage of 48 V. This system may be hot both when the ignition is on and after switching it off.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels.

Warning

In the event of an accident with an airbag deployment

The traction battery is automatically disconnected from the electrical circuit to prevent the initiation of short circuits and/or fires.

In the event of an impact to the vehicle's underbody

In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Move away from the vehicle.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
High-pressure washing. To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.
Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

Traction battery

The 48 V Li-ion (Lithium-ion) traction battery stores the electrical energy needed to propel the vehicle.
The traction battery is automatically charged to ensure that the charge level is always around 50% of the maximum level, in order to fully exploit the hybrid functionality and, at the same time, always have some capacity available for the energy recovery operation.
It is located under the front left seat.
The traction battery's range varies depending on the type of driving, the route and the aging of its components.

Tip
The traction battery ageing depends on several factors, such as climatic conditions and the distance travelled.

Warning
To preserve the mileage of your vehicle and the durability of your traction battery, CITROËN recommends that you:
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.

- Do not use a generator to recharge your vehicle's traction battery.

Warning

Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month.

Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and +30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).
Carry out the charging procedure for the traction battery (48V) via the accessory battery (12V) and the DC/DC converter.
Refer to the **12 V battery/Accessory batteries** section for the charging the batteries using a battery charger procedure.

Charging system (BEV)

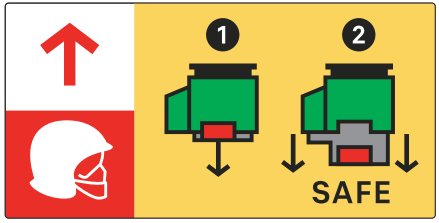
400 V ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles**.

The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



Warning
An electric vehicle's power train can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.



Warning
This label is intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.
No other person must touch the device shown on this label.

Warning
In the event of an accident or impact to the vehicle's underbody. In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
When washing. Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.
Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

Warning
High-pressure washing. To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.
Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

Warning
Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect/disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

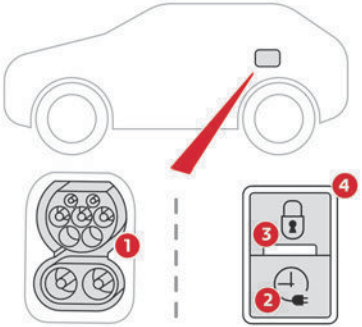
TRACTION BATTERY

This battery stores the energy that powers the electric motor and the thermal comfort equipment in the passenger compartment. It is discharged during use, and must therefore be regularly recharged. There is no need to wait for

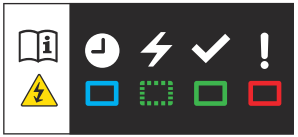
the traction battery to fall to its reserve level before recharging.
The range of the battery may vary according to the type of driving, the route, the use of thermal comfort equipment and the aging of its components.

Tip
The lifespan of the traction battery depends on multiple factors, such as climatic conditions, distance travelled and how often it has been fast-charged.

Charging connectors and indicator lights



1. Charging connectors
2. Deferred charging activation button
3. Nozzle locking indicator light Fixed red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked in the connector.
   Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.
4. Charging indicator light



State of charging indicator light	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting on opening the flap and disconnecting the charging cable.
Flashing white	Charging initialization.
Fixed blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging.
Fixed green	Charging complete. The charging indicator light goes off after about 2 minutes as the vehicle's functions go into standby. The indicator light comes on again when the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control key or when a door is opened to indicate that the battery is fully charged.
Fixed red	Malfunction.

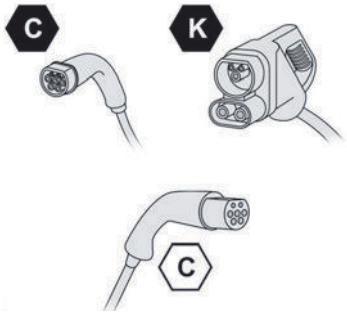
Warning
In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire!
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Charging cables, sockets and chargers

The charging cable supplied with the vehicle (depending on version) is compatible with the electrical systems in the country of sale. When traveling abroad, check the compatibility of local electrical systems with the charging cable.
A full range of charging cables is available from your dealer.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for more information and to obtain suitable charging cables.

Identification labels on charging sockets/connectors

Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.


C
K
C

Identification label

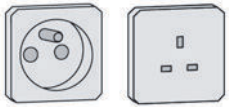
The meaning of each identification label is as follows:

Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type/voltage range
	Charging connector (vehicle side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
	Charging socket (charger side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
	Charging connector (vehicle side)	COMBO 2 (FF)	DC 50 V – 500 V

Standard charging, mode 2

Domestic socket

(standard charging - alternating current (AC)

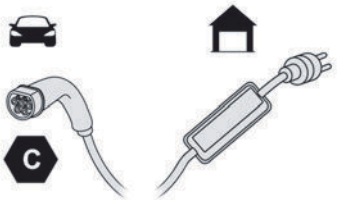


Mode 2 with a standard socket: 8 A maximum charging current.



Mode 2 with a **Green'Up** socket: 16 A maximum charging current.
To have this type of socket installed, call a professional installer.
Mode 2 with a standard socket: 8 A maximum charging current.

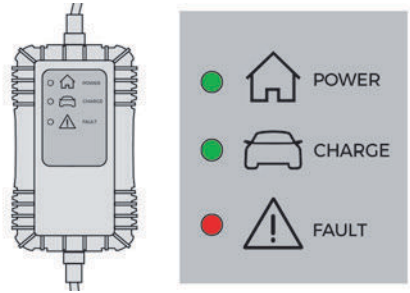
Specific domestic charging cable - mode 2 (AC)



Identification label **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side).

Warning
Specific domestic charging cable (mode 2). You must not damage the cable. In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

Control unit (mode 2)



POWER

Green: electrical connection established; charging can begin.

CHARGE

Flashing green: charging in progress or temperature pre-conditioning activated.
Fixed green: charging complete.

FAULT

Red: fault; charging not permitted or must be stopped immediately. Check that everything is connected correctly and that the electrical system is not faulty.

If the indicator light does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Upon plugging the charging cable into a domestic socket, all of the indicator lights come on briefly.
If no indicator lights come on, check the domestic socket's circuit-breaker:

- If the circuit-breaker has tripped, contact a professional to check that the electrical system is compatible and/or carry out any necessary repairs.
- If the circuit-breaker has not tripped, stop using the charging cable and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Control unit label - recommendations



Refer to the handbook before use.



1. Incorrect use of this charging cable may result in fire, property damage and serious injury or death by electrocution!
2. Always use a correctly earthed power socket, protected by a 30 mA residual current device.

3. Always use an electrical socket protected by a circuit-breaker appropriate for the electrical circuit's current rating.
4. The weight of the control unit must not be borne by the electrical socket, plug and cables.
5. Never use this charging cable if it is defective or in any way damaged.
6. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
7. Never immerse this charging cable in water
8. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adapter or on a damaged electrical socket.
9. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
10. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
11. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
12. Only use this charging cable with CITROËN vehicles.
13. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.
14. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.

State of indicator lights

	State of the indicator light	
Off		
On		(green)
		(red)
Flashing		(green)
		(red)

Control unit label

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
○	○	○		Not connected to the power supply or power is not available from the infrastructure.
● (green)	● (green)	● (red)		The control unit is currently performing a self-test.
● (green)	○	○		Connected only to the infrastructure or to the infrastructure and to the Electric Vehicle (EV) but no charging in progress.
● (green)	✳ (green)	○		Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is on charge or in a temperature preconditioning sequence.
● (green)	● (green)	○		Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is waiting for charging or the charging of the EV is completed.
○	○	● (red)		Control unit malfunction. No charging allowed. If an error indicator reappears after a manual reset, the control unit must be checked by a CITROËN dealer before the next charge.

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
(green)	(green)	(red)		The control unit is in diagnostic mode.

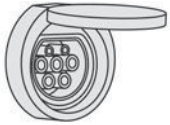
Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket.
Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook.

Accelerated charging, mode 3

Accelerated charging unit (depending on version)

(accelerated charging - single-phase or three-phase alternating current (AC))

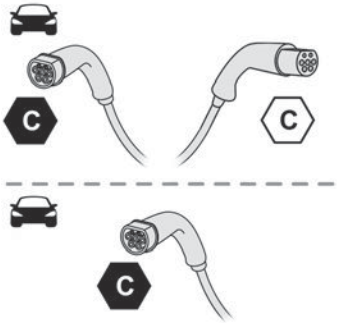


In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit: 32 A maximum charging current.



In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit (**Wallbox**): 32 A maximum charging current.

Charging cable, mode 3 (AC)



Identification labels **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).

Warning
Accelerated charging unit. Do not disassemble or modify the charging unit - Risk of electrocution and/or fire! Refer to the charging unit manufacturer's user manual for the operating instructions.

Superfast charging, mode 4

Fast public charger



(superfast charging - direct current (DC))

Charging cable, mode 4 (DC)

(integrated into the fast public charger)



Identification label **K** on the charging connector (vehicle side).
Only use fast public chargers where the cable length does not exceed 30 meters.

Charging the traction battery (BEV)

Principle

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles**.

To recharge, connect the vehicle to a domestic electricity supply (domestic or accelerated charging) or to a fast public charger (superfast charging).
For a full charge, follow the desired charging procedure without pausing it, until it ends automatically. Charging can be either immediate or deferred (except fast public charger, mode 4).
You can stop domestic or accelerated charging at any time by unlocking the vehicle and removing the nozzle. For superfast charging, refer to the fast public charger.
For more information on the charging displays on the **Instrument panel** and the **Touch screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning

High Voltage battery

To preserve the mileage of your vehicle and the durability of the battery, it is recommended:

- To charge the high voltage battery to a charging level of 100% once a week to optimize battery performance and long-term health.

When the vehicle has not been fully charged for 1500 km, a message will be shown on the instrument cluster reminding to do so as soon as possible. If the vehicle has been parked for longer than one week without charging, start the vehicle as usual and charge the high voltage battery to a charging level of 100% as soon as possible.

Tip
It is also possible to monitor the charging progress using the **MyCitroën App** application.
For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.

Tip

Cooling the traction battery

The cooling fan in the engine compartment comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

Warning
Low charge level / Driving. Driving when the charge level of the traction battery is too low can lead to the vehicle breaking down and can lead to accidents or serious injuries. ALWAYS make sure the traction battery has a sufficient charge level.

Warning
Low charge level / Parking. If the outside temperature is negative, it is recommended not to park your vehicle outside for several hours at a low charging (less than 20%).

Vehicle Storage of a Hybrid / BEV

Warning
More than four weeks

- Charge the high voltage battery up to a charging level between 30% and 50% before long-time storage (more than four weeks).
- Do not connect the charging cable.
- Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10 °C and 30 °C.
- Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high-voltage battery.
- Remove the black negative (–) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals, or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (–) terminals in the engine compartment.
- Every four to six months, check the battery's state of charge. If the charging level is below 30%, recharge up to a level between 30% and 50%.

Putting back into operation (BEV)

- Recharge the high voltage battery up to a charging level of 100% before starting the vehicle.
- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the 12 V battery. Initialise the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant level.

Precautions

Our electric vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations on the maximum limits for electromagnetic fields, as issued by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP - 7 1998 Guidelines).

Wearers of pacemakers or equivalent devices



Ask your doctor about what precautions you should take, or ask the manufacturer of your implanted electro-medical device about whether its operation is guaranteed in an environment which complies with the ICNIRP recommendations.

Warning
For **domestic or accelerated charging**, do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or charging unit, even for a short time.
For **superfast charging**, do not use it yourself and avoid approaching a public superfast charging point. Leave the area and ask a third party to recharge the vehicle.

For domestic or accelerated charging

Warning
Before charging. Depending on the context:

- ▶ Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
- ▶ Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.

You should preferably use the charging cable available as an accessory.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the exterior temperature is below:

- 0°C, charging times may be extended.
- -20°C, charging is not possible, if the battery's state of charge is less than 5%.

Warning
During charging. As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle.
A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.
While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop.
If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or boot) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.
Never work under the bonnet:
– Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
– The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

Warning
After charging. Check that the charging flap is closed.
Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

For superfast charging

Tip
Before charging. Check that the fast public charging station and its charging cable are compatible with the vehicle.
If the exterior temperature is below:

- 0°C, charging times may be extended.
- -20°C, charging is not possible, whatever the battery's state of charge.

Warning
After charging. Check that the charging flap is closed.

Deferred charging

By default, the deferred charging start time is set to be around midnight.
Depending on equipment, this time can be changed.

Settings

The programming of the deferred charging function is carried out from

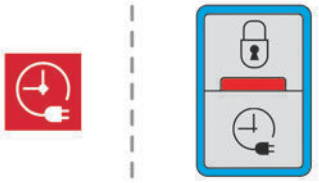
- a smartphone via the **MyCitroën App** application
- via the central screen by selecting "**Vehicle settings / Delayed charging**" and via the push on the flap.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.
The vehicle is equipped with a lithium-ferphosphate (LFP) battery, which has specific charging characteristics. Unlike other types of batteries, charging to 100% is recommended even for daily use to ensure optimal performance and help maintain battery capacity over time.
A full charge is also especially recommended before long trips. However, it may take longer than a partial charge.

Activation

Tip
Deferred charging is only possible with modes 2 and 3.

- After programming the deferred charging, connect the vehicle to the desired charging equipment.

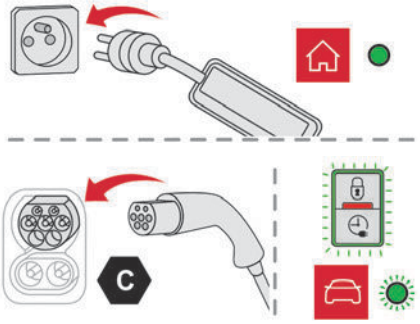


- Lock the vehicle.
- Press this button in the flap within one minute to activate the system (confirmed by the charging indicator light coming on in blue).

Connection

- Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode **P**, or parking brake pulled, otherwise charging is not possible.
- Open the charging flap by pressing the pushbutton, and check that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

Domestic charging, mode 2



- Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.

When the connection is made, all of the indicator lights on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator light remains on in green.

- Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lights in the flap, then those on the control unit.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Tip
When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

Accelerated charging, mode 3



- Follow the accelerated charging unit (**Wallbox**) user instructions.

- ▶ Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- ▶ Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator light in the flap flashes green.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Superfast charging, mode 4



- ▶ Depending on version, remove the protective cover from the lower part of the connector.
- ▶ Follow the instructions for use of the fast public charger and connect the cable from the fast public charger to the vehicle's connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator light in the flap.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Disconnection



Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- ▶ If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it**.
- ▶ If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.

The red indicator light in the charging flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.

- ▶ In modes 2 and 3, remove the charging nozzle within **30 seconds**.

The charging indicator light comes on in white.

Tip
If selective unlocking of the doors is activated, press the unlocking button on the remote control twice to disconnect the nozzle.

Tip
When charging is complete, the green charging indicator lamp in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

Domestic charging, mode 2

The end of charging is confirmed when the green **CHARGE** indicator light on the control unit and the green charging indicator light in the flap come on fixed.

- ▶ Replace the protective cover on the charging nozzle and close the charging flap.
- ▶ Disconnect the control unit end of the charging cable from the domestic socket.

Accelerated charging, mode 3

The end of charging is indicated by the charging control unit and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator light in the flap.

- ▶ Hang up the nozzle on the charging unit and close the charging flap.

Superfast charging, mode 4

The end of charging is indicated by the charger and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator light in the charging flap.



- ▶ Depending on version, you can also stop charging by pressing this button in the charging flap (in mode 4 only).

- ▶ Hang up the nozzle on the charger.
- ▶ Depending on version, replace the protective cover on the lower section and close the charging flap.

The DC connector is automatically released only under specific conditions:

- When the vehicle is started,
- In the event of a system malfunction,
- When the charging process is properly interrupted (either by the user or the charging station).

Tip
When the charging nozzle is disconnected, a message on the instrument panel indicates that charging is complete, even if the charging nozzle was disconnected before full charging was completed.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behavior of the vehicle when braking.

Warning
Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels.
They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Tip
Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Use only chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

Original tyre size	Chain type
215/65 R16	Polaire XK9 120
215/60 R17	Polaire XK9 120

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
- Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

Tip
It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

Warning
Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Towing device

Load distribution

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towable load must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 meters of altitude.

Tip
Use genuine towing devices and wiring harnesses approved by CITROËN.
We recommend having them fitted by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, they must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.

Warning
Comply with the maximum authorised towable weight, as indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, on the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Warning
If using accessories attached to the towing device (e.g. bicycle carriers, tow boxes):
– Comply with the maximum authorised nose weight.
– Do not transport more than 4 conventional bicycles or 2 electric bicycles.
When loading bicycles onto a bicycle carrier on a towball, be sure to place the heaviest bicycles as close as possible to the vehicle.

Warning
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Blanking plug

If your vehicle is equipped with a blanking plug, it must be removed before towing.
It is located behind the lower air intake grille.
Contact your CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have it removed.

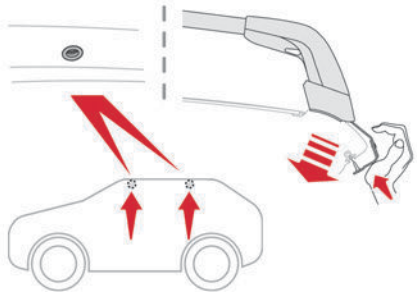
Roof bars

Warning
As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

Warning
Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **70 kg**.
As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Warning
Recommendations. Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

Direct fitting on roof



The transverse bars must only be fixed at the four anchorage points located on the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.

The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each anchorage point.

Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 30 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematic system, dipped beam headlights or courtesy lights.

Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

Tip
If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
- For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.

Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

Warning
A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery/accessories battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Hood

Warning
Stop & Start / e-Auto mode. Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!



Warning
Electric motor
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!
Before carrying out any work under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition, check that the READY indicator lamp is off on the instrument panel and disconnect the nozzle from the charging connector if it is connected.

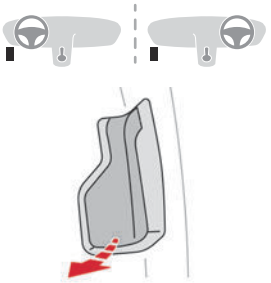


Tip
The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

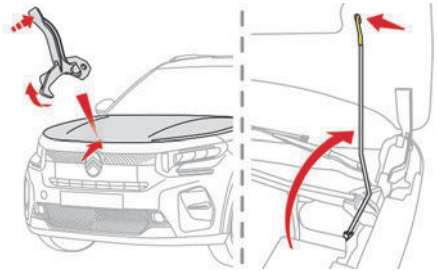
Warning
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

Warning
Cooling of the engine when stopped
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Opening



- ▶ Open the left-hand front door.
- ▶ Pull the interior release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.



- ▶ Lift the exterior safety catch and raise the hood.
- ▶ Undo the holding rod from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the hood open.

Closing

- ▶ Hold the hood and pull out the stay from the support slot.
- ▶ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ▶ Lower the hood and release it near the end of its travel.
- ▶ Pull on the hood to check that it is locked correctly.

Warning
Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

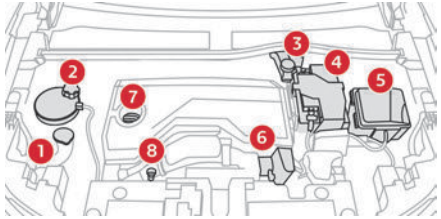
Engine compartment

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.

The locations of the following components may vary:

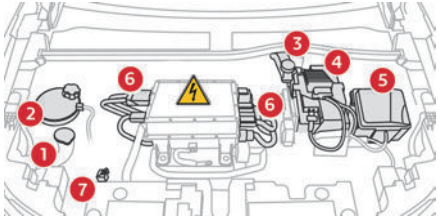
- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.

ICE engine



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/fuses
5. Fusebox
6. Air filter
7. Engine oil filler cap
8. Engine oil dipstick

BEV engine



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/fuses
5. Fusebox
6. 400 V electrical circuit
7. Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians

For more information on the **Charging system (BEV)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
The fluids must comply with the Manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

Warning
Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

Warning
Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Restriction
Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil

The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.

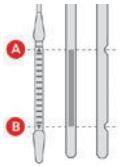
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Warning
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

- ▶ Grasp the dipstick by its colored grip and pull it out completely.
- ▶ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



- ▶ Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (max)** and **B (min)**.

Do not start the engine if the level is:

- above mark **A**: contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

Warning
Oil grade. Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop).
Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

Warning
Never remove the oil filler cap with the engine running. Risk of burns and splashes inside the engine compartment.

- ▶ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ▶ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ▶ Top up the level if necessary.
- ▶ After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick back into its tube up to the stop.

Warning
The dipstick must be pushed completely in to prevent oil from spilling onto the engine. Risk of fire inside the engine compartment.

Tip
The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

Brake fluid



The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

Warning
Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant

For ICE or MHEV versions



It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.
If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
As the cooling system is pressurized, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

For BEV versions

Warning



Do not top up the coolant.Do not top up the coolant.



If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to contact a CITROËN dealer.

Warning

Cooling of the engine when stopped

The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Windshield washer fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

Warning
Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).
The use of vinegar or any other non-dedicated product will cause irreversible damage to the windscreen washer system.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the

braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

Tip
For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Tip
A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change)

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Tip
After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual parking brake



If you notice excessive brake lever travel or decreased effectiveness, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tip
For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres



The inflation pressure of all tires, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tires.

The pressures indicated on the tire pressure label are valid for "cold" tires. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

Warning
Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tires reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tires (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.
When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tires as soon as possible.
Using different size wheels and tires from those specified can affect the lifetime of tires, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tires on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.
Always mark the direction of rotation on the tires that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tires. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.



Winter or 4-seasons tires can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

Timing and accessory kits



The timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.

A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance traveled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

Free-wheeling

In certain situations, it is necessary to put the vehicle into free-wheeling mode (e.g. towing, on a rolling road, automatic car wash (Wash mode), rail or sea transport).
The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

Warning
Never leave the vehicle unattended with the vehicle into free-wheeling mode.

Recommendations

To be able to move the vehicle in freewheeling mode, the driver absolutely must:

- leave the engine running.
- put the automatic gearbox or drive selector in **N** mode.
- manually release the electric parking brake.

With manual or EAT6 automatic gearbox and manual parking brake





To release them

- With the vehicle stationary and engine running, depress the brake pedal.
- With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever into neutral.

- With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector to mode **N**.
- Release the parking brake.
- Release the brake pedal, then switch off the engine.

Reverting to normal operation

- Apply the parking brake.
- With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector to mode **P.**

Advice on care and maintenance

General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Exterior

Warning
Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

Tip
When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away.
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).

Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

Warning
When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Bodywork

High-gloss paint

Warning
Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

Tip
Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

Warning
Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

Tip
Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Textile

The dashboard, door panels and seats may contain parts made of textile material.

Maintenance

Warning
Do not use aggressive cleaning products (e.g. alcohol, solvent or ammonia). Do not use steam-cleaning systems - risk of affecting the adhesion of the fabrics!

Tip
Remove dust from the textile parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
Rub down the textile parts once per year with a clean, damp cloth. After leaving overnight to dry, brush with a soft-bristled brush.

Stain removal

Warning
Do not rub the stain or it may spread or you may cause the substance to penetrate the surface.

Tip
Act quickly by reducing the stain from its edges inwards.
Remove as much substance or solids as possible using a spoon or spatula, and remove as much liquid as possible using absorbent paper.

Tip

Product/Procedure to use depending on the type of stain:

- Grease, oil and ink: clean with a pH-neutral detergent.
- Vomit: clean with sparkling mineral water.
- Blood: spread flour over the stain and allow to dry; remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Mud: allow to dry and then remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Cake, chocolate, ice cream: clean with lukewarm water.
- Sugary and/or alcoholic drinks: clean with lukewarm water, or lemon juice if the stain is persistent.
- Hair gel, coffee, tomato sauce, vinegar: clean with lukewarm water and lemon juice.
- For solid substances, then use a soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
- For liquid substances, then use a damp microfibre cloth and then dry with another cloth.

Leather

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.
It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

Warning
Do not use maintenance products which are not suitable for cleaning leather (e.g. solvent, detergent, petrol, pure alcohol). Do not use bleaching or colour-removal products (e.g. perchloroethylene).
When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

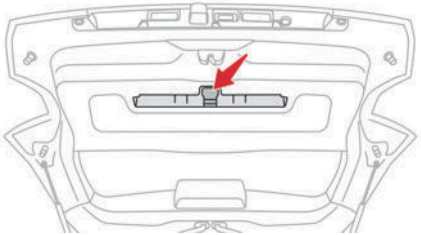
Tip
Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.
Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.
Clean the leather, without rubbing too vigorously, using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product.
Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

Warning triangle

This Warning triangle is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged to provide a reflective advising sign to other vehicles.

Warning
Before getting out of the vehicle.
Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

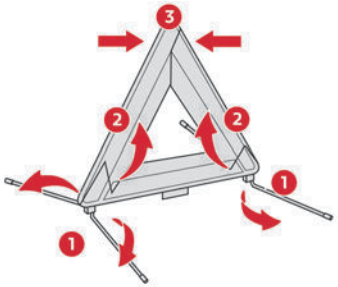
Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a warning triangle.

► After opening the tailgate, unhook the retaining elastic to release the case containing the warning triangle.

Assembling and placing the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.
For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

► Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Tool kit

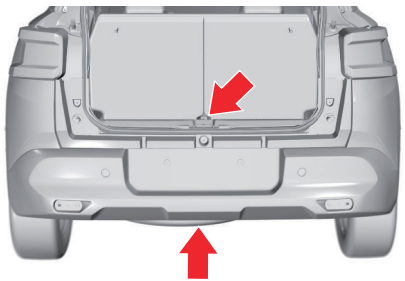
Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.
Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- Temporary puncture repair kit.
- Spare wheel.

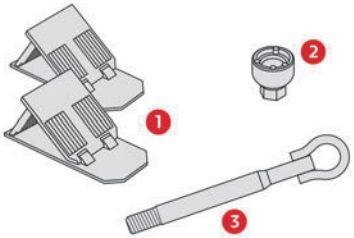
Warning
These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.
Do not use them for any other purpose.

Access to the tools

Depending on version, the tool kit is located under the rear of the vehicle with the spare wheel, secured by a winch system. The winch system can only be operated by opening the boot and lifting the rear floor carpet. For instructions on how to remove the spare wheel and tool carrier assembly, refer to the section **"Removing the spare wheel."**



List of tools

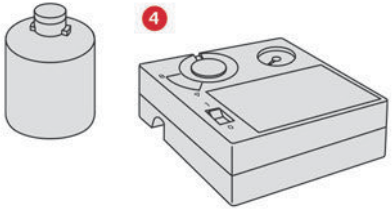


1. Chocks to immobilize the vehicle (depending on equipment)

2. Socket for the security bolts (depending on equipment) To adapt the wheelbrace to the special 'security' bolts.
3. Removable towing eye

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

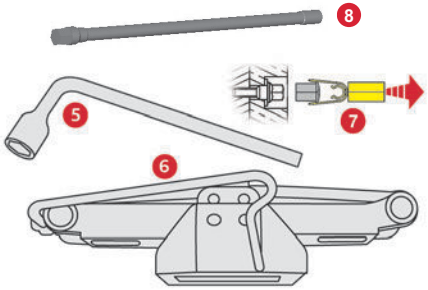
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker. For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit,** refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace For removing the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle To raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment) For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.
8. Jack handle

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tire.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE, and also complies with UKCA requirement, as defined by the Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 No.1597.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

Temporary puncture repair kit

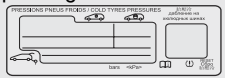
Tip
Visit this link to view explanatory videos: https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tire so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tyre tread.

Tip
The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tyre after a puncture.

Tip
For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.
For more information on **Vehicle Identification**, particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.

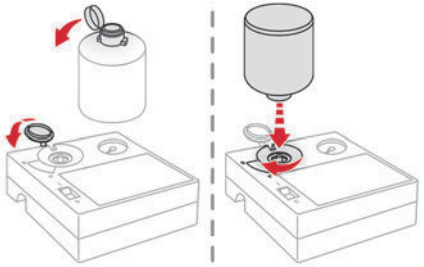


Warning
Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tire under-inflation detection** , refer to the corresponding section.

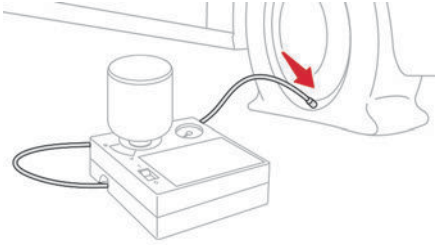
Repair procedure

Warning
Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tyre.

- Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
- Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lights, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
- Switch the ignition off.



- Remove the transparent cap from the bottle of sealant.
- Lift the protective cover before installing the bottle of sealant on the compressor.
- Turn the bottle of sealant over and screw it a quarter turn into the compressor.
- Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired and place it in a clean place.



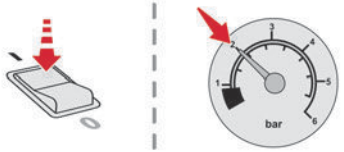
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
- Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.



- Affix the speed limit sticker.

Warning
The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

- Switch the ignition on.



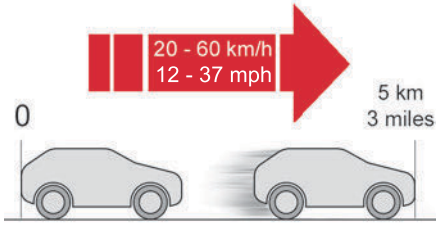
- Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "**I**" until the tire pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tire; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blow-back).

Warning
If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Move the switch to position "**O**".

- Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Remove the kit.
- Refit the cap on the valve.
- Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

Warning
The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



- Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometers) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair **and the tire pressure** using the kit:
- If the tire pressure is incorrect, contact a CITROËN dealer to have the tire changed.
- If the tire pressure is correct, drive a second time for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometers) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), stop then check again the tire pressure using the kit to confirm the effective repair of the tire.

Warning
With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).
You must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tyre changed.

Checking/adjusting tire pressures

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tire pressures.

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
- Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tire pressure label.

To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

Warning
If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "**O**".
- Remove the kit and stow it.
- Refit the cap on the valve.

Spare wheel

Tip
Visit this link to view explanatory videos: https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

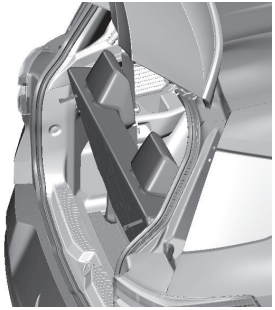
Accessing the spare wheel

The spare wheel is located under the rear of the vehicle with the tool kit, secured by a winch system.

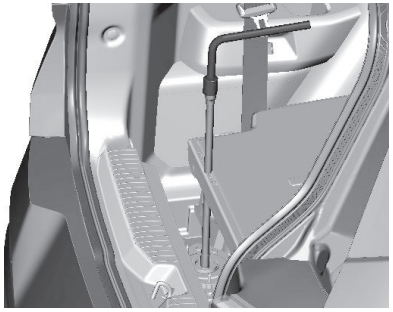
Tip
Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard steel or 'space-saver' wheel with tool kit only.

Removing the spare wheel

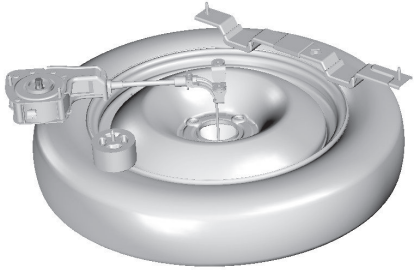
Lift the floor panel to access the winch control (**a**).



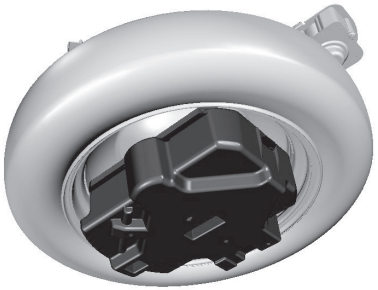
Unscrew the bolt until it stops, using the wheel brace and the jack handle, to release the winch cable (**b**).



Pull the wheel and tool carrier assembly from the rear of the vehicle (**c**).



Remove the jack with its mounting clip to release the entire wheel/tool assembly, as shown in the illustration (**d**).



Tip
The damaged wheel cannot be stored in the original spare wheel position, as it is larger.

Tip
Ensure that the winch cable is fully retracted before driving.

Removing a wheel

Warning

Parking the vehicle.

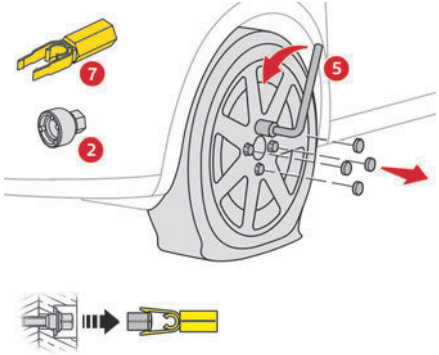
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
Apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a wheel chock against the wheels that are not being replaced.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

Tip

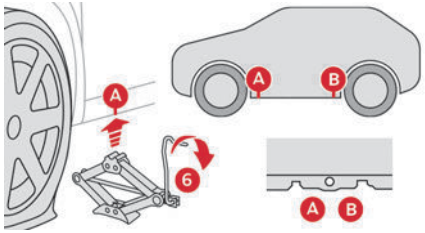
Wheel with wheel trim.

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling with both hands on one of the upper arms.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

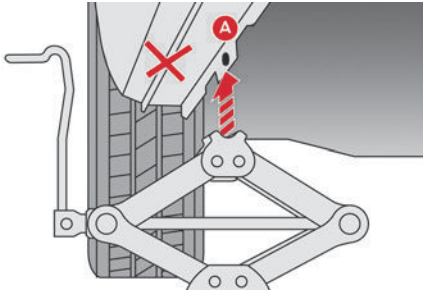


- If the vehicle has steel wheels, remove the wheel trim.
- To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool **7** (alloy wheels).
- Fit security socket **2** on wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheel brace **5** only.

Warning
Never use an impact wrench on the security bolt socket.

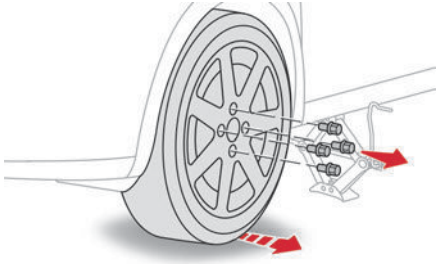


- Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

Warning
Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle.
Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!



- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

Tip

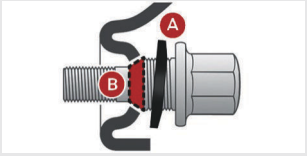
Stowing the damaged wheel

- To stow an alloy wheel, first remove the wheel trim from the centre of the wheel so that the fastening device (nut) can be put in place.

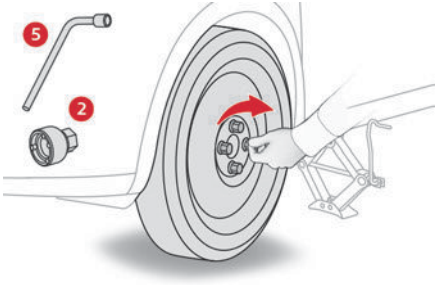
- In the case of a "**space saver**" **type spare wheel**, the damaged wheel cannot be stowed under the floor. It must be placed in the boot; use a cover to protect the inside of the boot.

Fitting a wheel

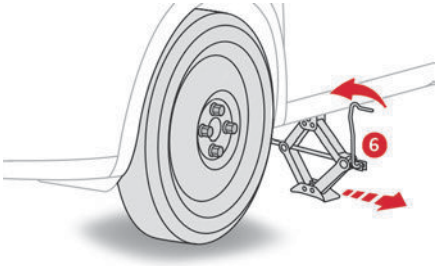
Tip
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel



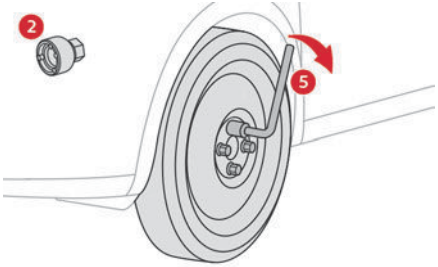
If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.



- ▶ Fit the wheel on the hub.
- ▶ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ▶ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheel brace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- ▶ Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheel brace **5** only.

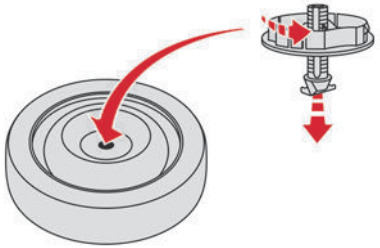


- ▶ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ▶ Fold jack **6** and remove it.



- ▶ Tighten the security bolt using the wheel brace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- ▶ Tighten the other bolts using the wheel brace **5** only.
- ▶ Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ▶ Store the tools.

Putting the spare wheel back in place



- ▶ Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
- ▶ Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- ▶ Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ▶ Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
- ▶ Depending on version, put the tool box back in place in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

After changing a wheel

Warning
With a non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel



Deactivate certain driving aid functions (active safety brake, adaptive cruise control, etc.).
Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km).
Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.
The wheel trim from the replaced wheel must not be refitted.

Warning
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tyre pressure checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

Tip
In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlights and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lights have been on for a few minutes.

Warning
The headlights have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products**.
- Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
- When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlights, lights or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Warning
Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp/lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns! Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.
It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

Tip
Refitting the lamp units. Perform the operations in the reverse order to dismantling.

Warning
Opening the bonnet/Accessing the bulbs. Proceed with caution when the engine is hot - risk of burns!

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!

Tip
Halogen bulbs (Hx). To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Light-emitting diode (LED) headlights and lights

Depending on version, the affected types of headlights/lights are:

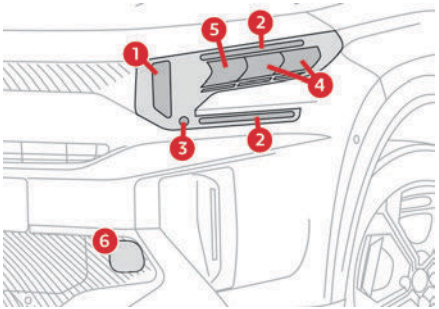
- LED technology headlights.
- Offset daytime running lights.
- Dipped beam headlights.
- Main beam headlights.
- Direction indicator side repeaters.
- Brake lights.
- Third brake light.
- Number plate lights.

Warning
If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Do not touch the Full LED technology headlamps or lamps - risk of electrocution!

Warning
Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!

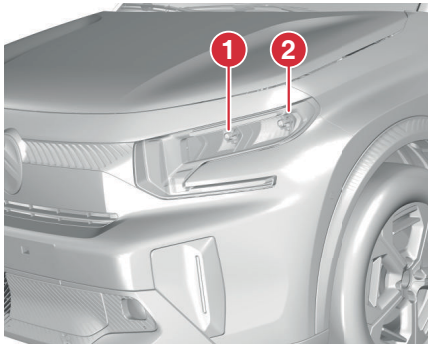
Front lights

Model with LED technology headlights



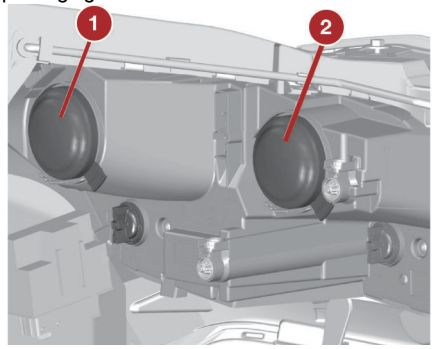
1. Daytime running lights/Sidelights (LED)
2. Daytime running lights/Sidelights (LED)
3. Direction indicators (PY21W)
4. Dipped beam headlights (HP)
5. Main beam headlights (LED)
6. Fog lights (H11-55W)

Halogen headlights



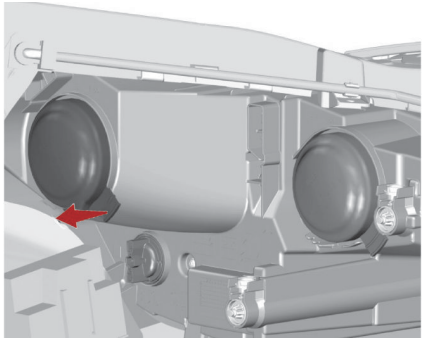
1. Main beam headlights (H7)
2. Dipped beam headlights (H7)

Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam, high beam, daytime running lights and parking lights.



1. Low beam
2. High beam

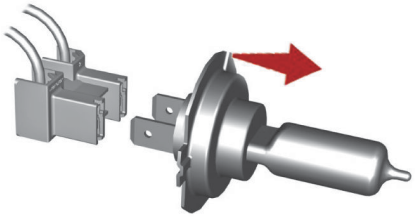
LOW BEAM



▶ Remove the protective cover.

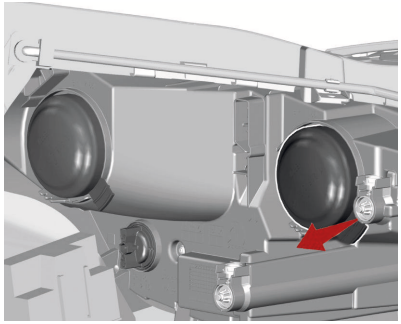


▶ Press latch and remove the bulb socket from reflector housing.

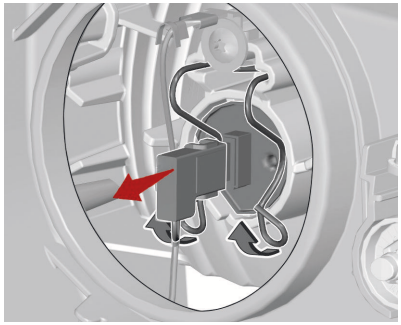


- ▶ Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
- ▶ Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
- ▶ Reinstall the cover.

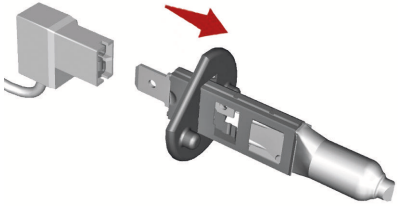
HIGH BEAM



- ▶ Remove the protective cover.



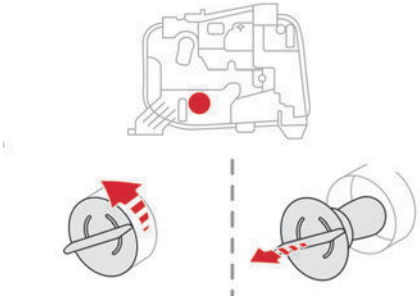
- ▶ Disengage the spring clip from the retainer.
  Swivel the spring clip upwards.
  Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.



- ▶ Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
- ▶ Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
- ▶ Reinstall the cover.

Direction indicators

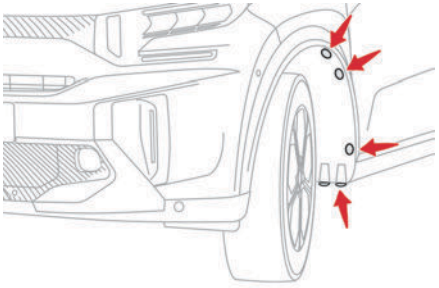
Tip
Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.



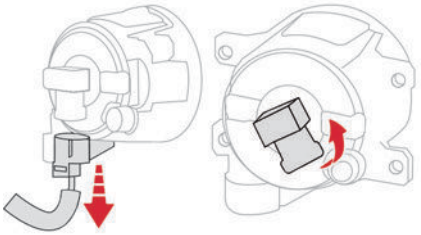
- ▶ Turn the connector a quarter turn anticlockwise.
- ▶ Pull the bulb connector.
- ▶ Remove the bulb and replace it.

Tip
Amber-coloured bulbs must be replaced by bulbs with identical specifications and colour.

Foglights



- Unclip the wheel arch trim.
- Turn the steering wheel so that the front of the wheel is pointing to the outside.
- Unscrew three Torx T20 screws (side) and two hex M10 screws (bottom) from the mudguard to have access to fog light.



- Disconnect the front fog light connector.
- With a quarter turn into counterclockwise, remove the bulb holder from the front fog light.
- Remove the bulb and replace it.

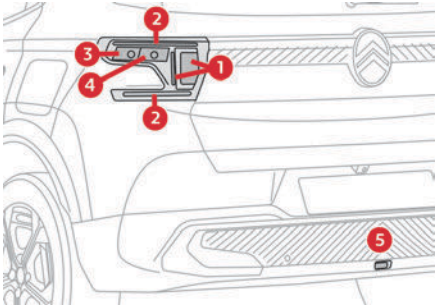
Tip
To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Integrated direction indicator side repeaters

- Insert a flat screwdriver between the door mirror and its base.
- Tilt the screwdriver and use it as a lever to extract the mirror.
- Unclip the shell of the door mirror by pressing on the two retaining clips.
- Press the central tab and remove the side repeater.
- Pull out the bulb holder and replace the faulty bulb.

Tip
For the replacement of these bulbs, you can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lights



1. Brake lights (P21-5W / LED) / Sidelights (5W)
2. Sidelights (W5W / LED)
3. Direction indicators (WY16W)
4. Reversing lights (W16W)
5. Foglight (LED)

Changing bulbs

These bulbs are changed from inside the boot.

- Open the boot.
- Remove the access flap on the corresponding side trim.
- Disconnect the light unit connector.
- Unscrew the nut and remove it. **Be careful not to drop it inside the wing.**
- Unclip the light unit and carefully extract it, pulling it straight towards the outside.

A standard pair of pliers or the wheelbrace (depending on equipment) may be necessary to remove the nut.

- Remove the retaining tabs from the bulb holder and remove it.
- Turn the bulb a quarter turn and replace it.

Tip
Make sure to engage the lamp unit in its guides while keeping it in line with the vehicle. Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without damaging the lamp unit.

Interior lighting

Courtesy light (W5W)

- Using a thin, flap tip screwdriver, unclip the entire console surrounding the courtesy light.
- Remove the defective bulb and replace it.
- Fit the console back into place around the courtesy light and clip it correctly.

Boot (W5W)

- Unclip the unit by pushing the base from behind.
- Pull the bulb out and replace it.
- Put the unit back in place.

Fuses

Warning
Changing a fuse. All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

Tip
Installing electrical accessories. The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
CITROËN accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its recommendations, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

12 V battery / Accessory battery

Lead-acid starter batteries

Restriction
These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

Warning
Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Warning
If the battery fails (after warranty coverage), replace it with a battery of the same specification as the one used in the vehicle.
All battery information can be found online at:
https://public.servicebox-parts.com/ACddb/index.html or https://service.citroen.com/ACddb/index.html

Warning
Electronic control units/LED technology headlamps. Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlamps.
Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlamps! Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

Warning
Frozen battery. Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion! If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

Warning
Automatic gearbox. Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

BEV

Tip
Flat accessory battery. It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

Warning
Precautions before working on the accessory battery. Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

Warning
Jump-starting another vehicle. Do not start or jump-start another vehicle using the vehicle's accessory batteries.

Symbols


No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.


Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.


Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.


The vehicle's battery contains sulfuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.


For more information, refer to the handbook.

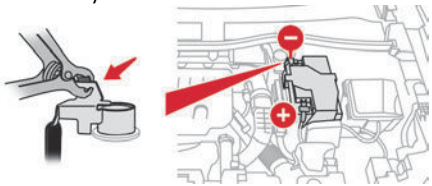

Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

For petrol versions (ICE)

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or for charging a discharged battery.

Accessing the battery

The battery is located under the hood.



For access to the (+) terminal:

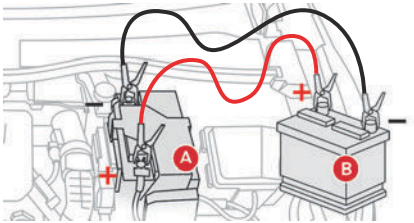
- ▶ Release the hood by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
- ▶ Raise the bonnet.

(+) Positive terminal with a quick-release terminal.
(-) Negative terminal.

Starting using another battery

If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

Warning
Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ▶ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- ▶ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **(A)** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **(B)** or of the booster.
- ▶ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **(B)** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).

- ▶ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of flat battery **(A)**.
- ▶ Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ▶ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ▶ Wait for it to return to idle.
- ▶ Disconnect the jump leads in reverse order.
- ▶ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- ▶ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

Warning
Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
- If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

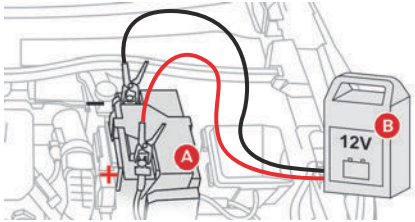
Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

Warning
Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

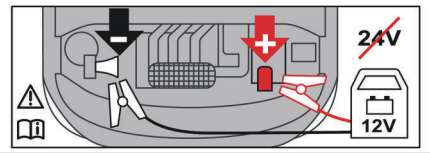
Tip
It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ▶ Switch the ignition off.
- ▶ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- ▶ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ▶ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ▶ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- ▶ Connect the cables of charger **(B)** as follows:
  - ▶ the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **(A)**.
  - ▶ the negative (-) black cable to the (-) terminal of battery **(A)**.
- ▶ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **(B)** before disconnecting the cables from battery **(A)**.

Warning
If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



Disconnecting/Reconnecting the 12 V battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.
Before disconnecting the 12 V battery:

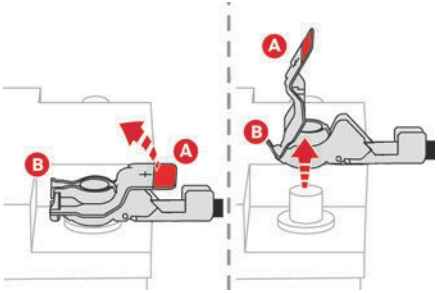
- ▶ Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
- ▶ Close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows).
- ▶ Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lights, etc.).

▶ Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

After accessing the 12 V battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal

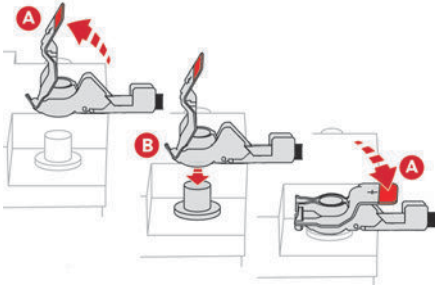


▶ Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.

▶ Raise lever **(A)** fully to release clamp **(B)**.

▶ Remove clamp **(B)** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



▶ Raise lever **(A)** fully.

▶ Refit open clamp **(B)** on the **(+)** terminal.

▶ Push clamp **(B)** fully down.

▶ Lower lever **(A)** to lock clamp **(B)**.

▶ Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.

Warning
Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

Tip
The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

For hybrid versions (MHEV)

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or for charging a discharged battery (12 V or 48 V).

▶ Access to the 12 V battery.

For more information on **Accessing the battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

▶ If necessary, perform the 12 V battery disconnection/reconnection procedure.

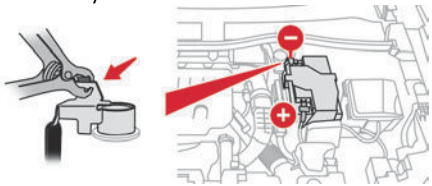
For more information on **Disconnecting/ Reconnecting the battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

▶ After reconnecting the 12 V battery, perform the automatic reset procedures of the electronic systems and manual reset of some equipment.

For more information on **Following reconnection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Accessing the battery

The battery is located under the hood.



For access to the (+) terminal:

▶ Release the hood by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.

▶ Raise the bonnet.

(+) Positive terminal with a quick-release terminal.

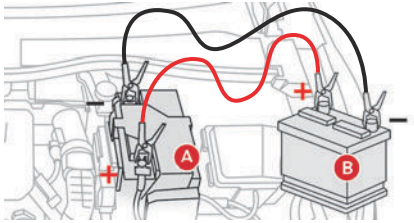
(-) Negative terminal.

Starting using another battery

Tip
The hybrid system starts the vehicle, but a 12 V supply is required. There are several reasons why the vehicle cannot be started.

If the 12 V battery is flat, the 12 V power supply can be ensured using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster or using a battery charger.

Warning
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **(A)** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **(B)** or of the booster.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **(B)** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of flat battery **(A)**.
- Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- Wait for it to return to idle.
- Disconnect the jump leads in **reverse order**.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Allow the engine to run for at least 20 minutes, with the vehicle stationary (in a ventilated area to avoid accumulation of exhaust gases), so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

Warning
Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. e-Auto mode).

Charging the 12 V battery using a battery charger

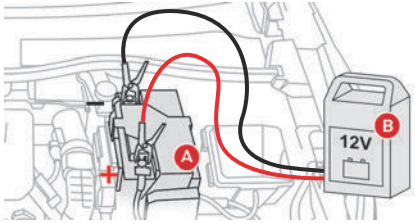
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery (e.g. if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks) Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
The hybrid system is connected to the 12 V network through the DC/DC converter. Any operation may affect the overall behaviour of the system.
To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

Warning
Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

Tip
It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- Switch off charger **(B)** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.

- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Connect the cables of charger **(B)** as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **(A)**.
  - the negative (-) black cable to the (-) terminal of battery **(A)**.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

Charging the 48 V battery using the 12 V battery

If the start fails, refer to the paragraph "**Starting using another battery**" and follow the recommended procedure.
In case of failure, especially after long storage, the 48 V battery may be discharged and require a charging process.

Warning
Do not try to charge the hybrid system directly. The hybrid system is connected to the 12 V network through the DC/DC converter. Any operation may affect the overall behaviour of the system.

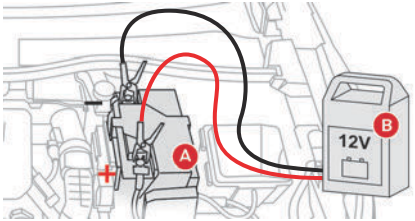
Warning
Only use a specific 12 V battery charger capable of maintaining 13.5 V with a high level of current 40-50 A (approx. 600 W).

To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V. Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

Warning
Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

Tip
It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- Switch off charger **(B)** before connecting the cables to the 12 V battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.

Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.

- Connect the cables of charger **(B)** as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **(A)**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **(C)** on the vehicle.
- Open the driver's door and turn the ignition on **without pressing the brake pedal** (to wake up the vehicle).

The hybrid system will automatically start charging the 48 V battery after 1 minute with a 12 V power supply higher than 13.5 V. The current supplied by the battery charger should be about 30-50A.
When the appropriate energy level is reached in the 48 V battery (between 30 to 40 minutes depending on 12 V battery state of charge), the hybrid system automatically stops the charging process of the 48 V battery.

- At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **(B)** before disconnecting the cables from 12 V battery **(A)**.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Operate the starter on the vehicle and let the engine run.
- Wait for it to return to idle.
- Allow the engine to run for at least 20 minutes, with the vehicle stationary (in a ventilated area to avoid accumulation of exhaust gases), so that the 48 V battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

Disconnecting/Reconnecting the 12 V battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend

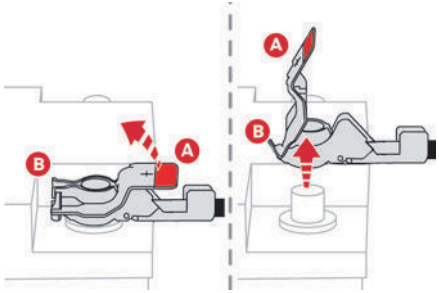
disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.
Before disconnecting the 12 V battery:

- Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
- Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lights, etc.).
- Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

After accessing the 12 V battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

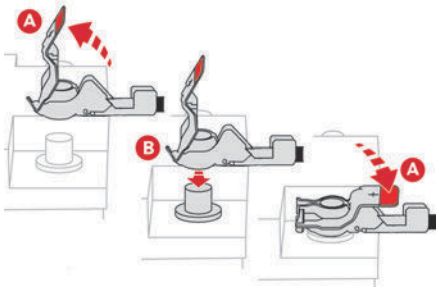
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.
- Raise lever **(A)** fully to release clamp **(B)**.
- Remove clamp **(B)B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise lever **(A)** fully.
- Refit open clamp **(B)** on the **(+)** terminal.
- Push clamp **(B)** fully down.
- Lower lever **(A)** to lock clamp **(B)**.
- Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.

Warning
Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialize.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reinitialize certain equipment:

- Remote control key.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.
- Tyre under-inflation detection

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable mechanical device.

Tip
General recommendations. Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

Warning
A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:

– broken down on a motorway or main road;

– not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake;
– not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running;
– towing with only two wheels on the ground;
– four-wheel drive vehicle;
– no approved towbar available.

Warning
Before towing the vehicle, it is essential to put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode.
For more information on **Free-wheeling** , refer to the corresponding section.

Warning

Special feature of towing for hybrid vehicles

With both rear wheels on the ground: it is only authorized for short distances (about 9 miles (15 km)) and at reduced speed (maximum 15 mph (25 km/h)).
With all four wheels on the ground: the vehicle can be towed a maximum of 0.06 mile (100 metres) at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h) (automatic gearbox in mode **N** and **N** displayed in the instrument panel).

Tip
Electric vehicles. An electric vehicle cannot under any circumstances be used to tow another vehicle.
However, it may be used, for example, to exit a rut.

Towing constraints				
Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion/Manual	☑	☑	☑	☑
Internal combustion/Automatic	☒	☑	☑	☒
Hybrid/Automatic	☒	☑	☑	☒
Electric 2WD	☒	☑	☑	☒

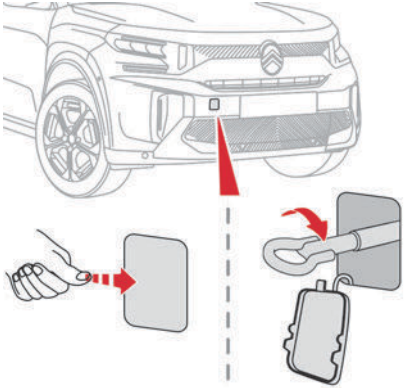
Tip
In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

Accessing the tools

The towing eye is stored with the tool kit in the boot.
For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



- Unclip the cover by pressing on its left-hand section.

To be towed:

- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Put the gearbox into neutral.

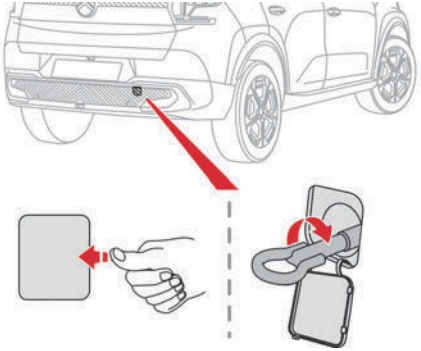
Warning
Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (e.g. braking, transmission) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

Warning
Automatic gearbox. Never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

- Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights on both vehicles in accordance with the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



- Unclip the cover by pressing at its right-hand section.
- Pull the cover downwards.

To tow:

- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

Tip
The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 meters. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 meters of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

Warning
When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

Warning
Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

Tip
If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Warning
For Hybrid (MHEV) models in high altitude conditions (> 2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

Engines and towed loads - ICE

Engines	**Turbo 100 ch Manual**		**Turbo 130 ch S&S**	
Gearboxes	**BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)**		**EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)**	
Codes	**EB2LTED MB6 STT Euro 6.4**		**EB2LTDM AT6 Euro 6.1 EB2LTDM AT6 Euro 5**	
Model codes: SJ...	**GHPV/4**	**GHPV/4**	**GHPT**	**GHPT**
Body styles	**5 seater**	**7 seater**	**5 seater**	**7 seater**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1199		1199	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	74		96	
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1500 / 600 (*)	1300 / 600 (*)	600	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	650 / 600 (*)	720 / 600 (*)	600	600
Maximum authorized nose weight (kg)	65	65	65	65

(*) According to destination

Engines and towed loads - MHEV

	Hybrid 145 ch	
Codes	**EB2LTDH2 EDCT6 Euro 6.4**	
Model codes: SJ...	**GHPY/7**	**GHPY/7**
Body styles	**5 seater**	**7 seater**
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1250 / 600 (*) / 0 (*)	1050 / 600 (*) / 0 (*)
Unbraked trailer (kg)	690 / 600 (*) / 0 (*)	710 / 600 (*) / 0 (*)
Maximum authorized nose weight (kg)	65	65
Petrol engines	Turbo Petrol	
Gearboxes	Electric dual-clutch automatic 6-speed	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,199	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)/ch	136	
Fuel	Unleaded	
Electric motor		
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	21	
Traction battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	
Voltage (Volts DC)	48	
Installed capacity (kWh)	0.9	
Combined power (kW)	145	

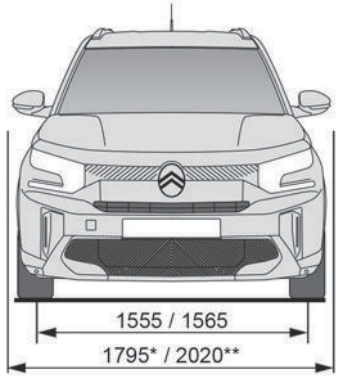
(*) According to destination, please refer to the registration paper

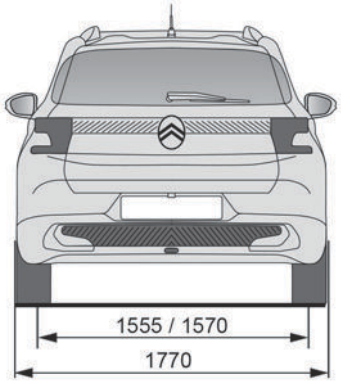
Engines and towed loads - BEV

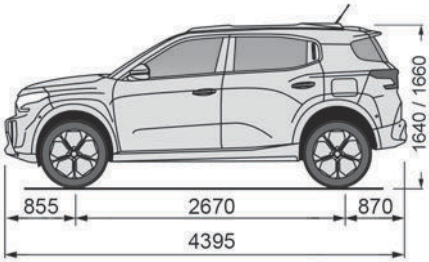
Model codes: **SJ...**	**Electric 113 Standard Range** **PZYA/Z**	**Electric 113 Long Range** **PZYA/Z**
Body styles	**5 seater**	**5 seater**
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	350	650
Unbraked trailer (kg)	350	650
Maximum authorized nose weight (kg)	65	65
Electric motor		
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power : EC standard (kW)/(hp)	83/113	83/113
Traction battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	Lithium-Ion
Installed capacity (kWh)	44	54
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**	
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16
Accelerated charging	**Mode 3**	
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32
Superfast charging	**Mode 4**	
Direct current (DC) voltage	400	400

Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



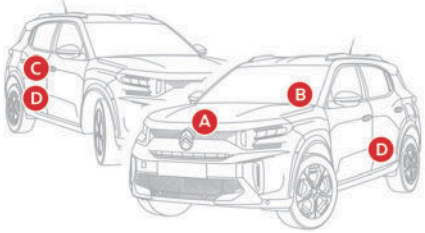




* With folded mirrors.
** With unfolded mirrors.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the hood.

Stamped on the chassis.

B Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.

Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

Affixed to the right-hand door.
Bears the following information:

- Manufacturer's name.
- European whole vehicle type approval number.
- Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
- Gross train weight (GTW).
- Maximum weight on the front axle.
- Maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tires/paint code label.

Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tyres:

- Tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
- Tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
- Spare tyre inflation pressure.
- Also indicates the paint color code.

Tip
The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres).
In the event of a change in the type of tyres, contact a CITROËN dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen - 10" Central Touchscreen

GPS navigation - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

Tip
The functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of the vehicle, and according to the country of sale.

Warning
The system is protected in such a way as to operate only on your vehicle.
For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth®.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to Mirror Screen (Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

Some functions cannot be accessible when driving.

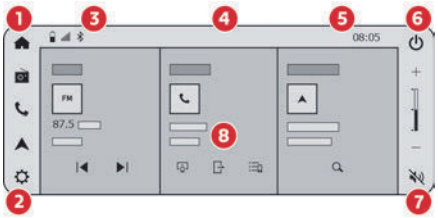
Warning
The navigation system is a driving aid. The driver stays fully responsible to always observe the traffic and to drive according to the applicable traffic rules. All instructions on the proper use of the navigation system should be followed. By using and entering in the navigation system, accept this page.

Tip
Updates. The user instructions of the vehicle shall specify that periodical updates are required to maintain performance and explain the available procedures to obtain and, if applicable, to perform these updates. For more information on **Settings**, particularly **Software Update**, refer to the corresponding section.

First steps

The system allows to interact with a variety of features using the touch screen, the steering mounted controls and voice commands.
By integrating with a Bluetooth® enabled smartphone, the system provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, navigation and smartphone's compatible applications.
The touch screen gives a quick access to all of entertainment, communication and navigation options.

Tip
The OSS (Open Source Software) source codes for the systems are available at the following link:
https://www.citroen.com/open-source



1. Home page
2. Main shortcuts
3. Connected device status For example, when a smartphone is connected (battery charge level, network signal strength, Bluetooth® connection).
4. Status bar This bar displays icons and messages relating to current system activities.
5. Time
6. Power on/off Screen on/off
7. Volume control Mute/Unmute sound
8. Widgets / Applications

Power on/off and Screen on/off

When button **6** is pressed, a page appears with the date and time and the option to select shutdown of the audio system or switch off the touch screen.

Power Off

Press this button to activate this mode.

The touch screen will turn off and the sound 10 will cut out.



Screen Off

Press this button to activate this mode.

Steering-mounted controls





Media (short press): change media sources.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Unmute the sound: short-press in the centre.



Short press: validate a selection; movement in the lists.

Radio: automatic search for the next station (in the list of radio stations sorted by name or by frequencies).
Media: next track.
Phone (short press): accept the incoming call.



Short press: validate a selection; movement in the lists.

Radio: automatic search for the previous station (in the list of radio stations sorted by name or by frequencies).
Media: previous track.
Phone (short press): refuse the incoming call; hang up the call in progress.



Voice control:
Short press, voice commands of the smartphone connected using Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen® (Siri with Apple®CarPlay®/Google Assistant with Android Auto) via the system.

Voice commands

First steps

The voice recognition setting is available with the cellular network and according to the language previously selected in the smartphone.

Information - Using the system



When voice commands are activated, say your command after the audible signal.
For commands in several stages, interaction takes place with the system to complete the initial request.
Some commands self-validate after 7 seconds.
If the system has not taken your command into account, it will indicate this by a voice message and an on-screen display.

Tip
Voice Assistant/Data Usage. Vehicle's location and voice recordings are not concerned; only textual transcriptions of your conversations with the voice assistant are kept after to be pseudonymised.

Opening voice recognition



Voice commands can be used on any screen page, provided there are no other sources which take priority in use (reverse, emergency or assistance call, telephone call, other smartphone voice recognition already launched).

Choice of opening voice recognition:

- Press the button located on the steering wheel.

or

- Say "**Siri**" or "**OK Google**" depending on smartphone type.

Warning
To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:

– Use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.

– After opening voice recognition with the steering wheel-mounted button or the button on the touch screen, always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before talking. No "beep" sounds when voice recognition is opened using "Hello Citroën".
– For optimal operation, it is recommended that you close the windows and the sunroof (depending on equipment) to avoid any external interference, and switch the ventilation off.
– Before speaking the voice commands, ask the other passengers not to speak.

Voice command example for radio and media:

"I want to listen to michael jackson"

Voice command example for telephone:

"Call Matthew's mobile"

"call 0113 345 9869"

"Call jonathan"

Tip
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth®, a pop-up window appears: "**No Device Connected**", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice command example for navigation:

"navigate home"

"Navigate me to gabrielle's house"

"search for public parking nearby"

Tip
Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

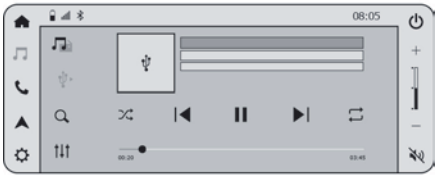
Applications

Radio



Select a radio station (FM, AM and DAB).

Media



Select a media source (USB, iPod®, Bluetooth®, Apple®CarPlay® and Android Auto).

Phone



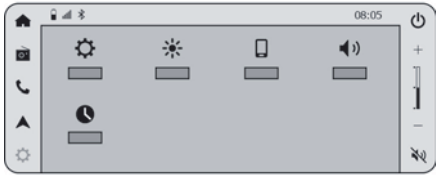
Connect a smartphone via Bluetooth®, make and receive calls, access the phonebook, call log.

Navigation
(Depending on equipment)



Configure guidance and choose a destination.
Use the services available in real time depending on equipment.

Settings



Main settings for the touch screen, audio system and GPS.

Radio

Changing the source (Media to Radio)

Press **Media** to display the main page.

Press this button to swith to Radio main page.

This icon is displayed.

Audio Settings

For more information on **Settings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio** to display the main page.

Press this button to change the waveband (FM, AM or DAB), according to the country of sale.

Warning
18 radio stations can be pre-set on each waveband.

Warning
Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the manufacturer, such as a charger with USB socket connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any malfunction of the system.

Selecting a radio station

Press **Radio** to display the main page.

Press this button to start/stop the scan for available radio stations. The radio stations found are displayed in the list of favourite radios.

Or

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for the previous/next radio stations. The tuner stops at the first radio station found.

Or

Press one of the buttons to perform a manual search for the lower/higher frequency.

On each press, the tuner decrements/increments by one frequency step (e.g. 0.05 MHz on FM; 1 KHz on AM). The value of the frequency step depends on the country of sale. In the last two cases, it is possible to manually store each radio station found.



If necessary, press one of the buttons to navigate in the Radio Favorites list.

1 2 3 ... Press and hold down the desired preset number.
A new memory entry replaces the previous one.

Recalling a stored radio station



Press **Radio** to display the main page.



Press this button to display the list of available radio stations.

Select a radio station in the list.
Or



Press **Radio** to display the main page.



Press this button to change the waveband (FM, AM or DAB), according to the country of sale.



If necessary, press one of the buttons to navigate in the Radio Favorites list.

1 2 3 ... Press and hold down the desired preset number.
A new memory entry replaces the previous one.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Tip
Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.
The volume may be higher when receiving traffic alerts or news.

DAB/FM station tracking

Tip
"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "AF" (alternative frequency) option enables to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Tip
When the system switches to analogue station, there is a delay of a few seconds with sometimes a change in volume.

When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

Warning
If the "DAB" radio station is not available, the sound cuts out when the digital signal quality becomes poor and the "AF" alternative frequency is crossed out.

Media

Changing the source (Radio to Media)



Press **Radio** to display the main page.



Press this button to swith to **Media** main page.



This icon is displayed.

Audio Settings/Devices Settings



For more information on **Settings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Changing the media source



Press **Media** to display the main page.



Press this button to change the media source (USB, iPod®, Bluetooth®, Android Auto or Apple®CarPlay®), according to the country of sale.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

The streaming function allows you to listen to the audio stream coming from the smartphone(s) connected via USB, iPod®, Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen®.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the system.
If playback does not start, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Tip
Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Playing a track



Press **Media** to display the main page.



Once the portable device is connected, browsing through the files is possible by pressing this button.

Some information appears, such as the title, artist, album and duration of the track currently playing.



Short press: go to the previous/ next track.



Track playback/pause.



Repeat the current title or the list of selected titles.



Random track playback.

Tip
To fast-forward or rewind a track, drag the playback progress slider at the bottom of the page.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices or Apple® devices via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.

The system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg, .mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
".wma" files must be of the WMA 9 standard.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, it is recommended to choose file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

Tip
It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile device.
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Phone

Warning
Depending on the legislation in force in the country, hand-held smartphones are forbidden when driving.
To make a call directly from the smartphone, the vehicle must first be safely stopped.

Tip
While driving, it is always possible to use the steering wheel controls or voice commands to start or end a call.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.
To accept the incoming call:



Press this touch screen button.

or



Press this steering wheel button.

Once the call has been picked up, a screen appears with the following information:

- the caller's phone number.
- the call status (incoming/outgoing, in progress, conference, ended).
- the call duration.

To refuse the incoming call/ hang up the call in progress:



Press this touch screen button.

or



Press this steering wheel button.

Making a call

Calling a new number



Press Phone to display the main page.



Press this button to display the numeric keypad.

Dial the phone number on the numeric keypad.



Press this button to launch the call.

Calling a contact from the phonebook



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



Press this button to display the phonebook.

Select the desired contact name in the list or



Press this button to search the contact name.

Enter your first letters; the corresponding contact names appear.
Select the desired contact name in the list.



Press this button to launch the call.

Calling a number from the call log



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



Press this button to display the call log.
Select the desired last number in the list.



Press this button to launch the call.

Call options

Call in progress

During a phone conversation, a screen appears with the following options:

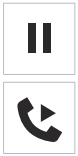


Mute/Unmute Press this button to mute/unmute the micro of the system.





Handset/Hands-free Press this button to transfer the call from the system to the smartphone and vice versa.



Hold/Retrieve Press this button to hold/retrieve the call.



End call Press this button to hang up the call.



Add Press this button to add a new call (Conference call).



Keypad Press this button to display the numeric keypad.

Multiple calls

If there is a second incoming call, it is possible to accept it.
The first call is on hold.
Then, it is possible to choose between switching from one to the other or merging the two calls.
The call can be ended with a specific contact or the conference call can be terminated.



Swap

Press this button to switch to the first call and put the second on hold.



Merge

Press this button to merge the two calls.
These options apply when a new call is received during a call in progress.

Connected Services

Multiple connected services are accessible via **MyCitroën App**, online or inside the vehicle.
Note: Connected services are not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.
Note: Full functionality of connected services is subject to registration and proper activation.
More information is available on Citroën website.
Connected services may include live navigation features such as online traffic information, as well as vehicle status updates and maintenance alerts.
Services accessible inside the vehicle also include the emergency call and assistance call.
These functions are automatically activated.
Terms and conditions apply.

Connectivity

Information - Bluetooth®

Warning
For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, pairing operations between the Bluetooth® mobile phone and the vehicle's Bluetooth® hands-free system must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition switched on.

Tip
Make sure that the mobile phone's Bluetooth® function is activated and "visible to all".
In the event of a malfunction, it is advisable to deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth® function from the mobile phone.

Tip
Once back in the vehicle, if the last connected mobile phone is present again (Bluetooth® function activated), it is automatically recognised and, within about 30 seconds of starting up, the pairing is automatically carried out.

Pairing a Bluetooth® mobile device

Warning
The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® mobile devices used.

Consult the phone user guide, the service provider and the OEM portal to check which services are available.

Tip
To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the phone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the phone.
If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth® function on the phone and deleting any CITROËN name present in the devices list.

Tip
Depending on phone type, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts.

Procedure from the phone



In order to make the system Bluetooth® visible, first open the **Devices Settings** menu on the system and activate the Bluetooth® function.



From the Bluetooth® menu on your phone, select the system name from the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the phone and follow the instructions on the phone and system touch screen.

Procedure from the system



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



In order to make the system Bluetooth® visible, first open the **Devices Settings** menu on the system and activate the Bluetooth® function.

Press **Scan for Devices** item.
The list of detected devices is displayed.
Select the required phone name in this list.

Managing paired mobile devices.

To connect or disconnect a paired phone and switch to Android Auto or Apple®CarPlay®:



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



Press **Devices Settings** to display the paired devices list.



Press the **Bluetooth** icon to connect/ disconnect the desired paired device.

Deleting a paired mobile device



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



Press **Devices Settings** to display the paired devices list.



Press this icon to delete the desired paired device.

Information - Wi-Fi

Tip
The Wi-Fi connection including credential sharing with the user's smartphone happens automatically after successful Bluetooth® connection with a wireless supported smartphone.

Warning
The Wi-Fi connection can only be used for Android Auto or Apple CarPlay wireless connection.

Tip
The Wi-Fi network uses the 5 GHz frequency.
Some smartphones may not support this feature.

Information - Mirror Screen®

Warning
Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's Android Auto or Apple CarPlay technology on the vehicle's screen.
For Apple CarPlay technology, the Apple

CarPlay function must first be activated on the smartphone. In all cases, the smartphone must be unlocked, to enable the communication process between the smartphone and the system to function (at first connection only). As principles and standards are constantly changing, we recommend keeping your smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system. Refer to your smartphone for Android Auto or Apple CarPlay settings.

Tip
For the list of suitable smartphones, visit the Android Auto and Apple CarPlay® websites
https://www.android.com/auto/
https://www.apple.com/in/ios/carplay/

Warning
Stop the vehicle before connecting Android Auto or Apple®CarPlay® and follow the instructions on your smartphone.

Tip
On connecting the USB cable, the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

Tip
It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile device.
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Mirror Screen®

Apple®CarPlay® connection

Tip
The Apple CarPlay® function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connecting Apple®CarPlay® smartphone can be carried out either by an USB cable or using a wireless connection.

USB connection

Tip
Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen® connection by Apple CarPlay. For more information on **USB sockets**, refer to the corresponding section.



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by an USB cable.



Activate the Bluetooth® function on the smartphone.



From the Home page, press this icon and then activate the Bluetooth® function.

As soon as a Bluetooth® device offering Apple®CarPlay® is connected, Apple®CarPlay® is automatically available, provided a wide-band communication channel (USB) is connected.



From the Home page, press the **AppleCarPlay** icon to display the Apple®CarPlay® interface.

Tip
When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to other mode; the source must be changed manually.

Wireless connection



First activate the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi functions on the smartphone.



From the Home page, press this icon and then activate the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi functions.

As soon as a Bluetooth® device offering Apple®CarPlay® is connected, Apple®CarPlay® is automatically available, provided a wide-band communication channel (Wi-Fi) is connected.



As soon as the wireless connection is established, press the **AppleCarPlay** icon to display the Apple®CarPlay® interface.

Tip
There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the network quality and the smartphone performances.

For wireless Apple®CarPlay®, subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi on your device.

Android Auto connection

Tip
Ensure the latest Android Auto application is available on your smartphone. If not, install it via "Play Store".
The Android Auto function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connecting Android Auto smartphone can be carried out either by an USB cable or using a wireless connection.

USB connection

Tip
Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen® connection by Apple CarPlay. For more information on **USB sockets**, refer to the corresponding section.



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by an USB cable.



Activate the Bluetooth® function on the smartphone.



From the Home page, press this icon and then activate the Bluetooth® function.

As soon as a Bluetooth® device offering Android Auto is connected, Android Auto is automatically available, provided a wide-band communication channel (USB) is connected.



From the Home page, press the **Android Auto** icon to display the **Android Auto** interface.

Tip
A validation procedure on the smartphone has to be followed for the first connection, with the vehicle stationary.

Wireless connection



First activate the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi functions on the smartphone.



From the Home page, press this icon and then activate the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi functions.

As soon as a Bluetooth® device offering Android Auto is connected, Android Auto is automatically available, provided a wide-band communication channel (Wi-Fi) is connected.



As soon as the wireless connection is established, press the **Android Auto** icon to display the Android Auto interface.

Tip
There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the network quality and the smartphone performances.

For wireless Android Auto, subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi on your device.



As soon as the wireless connection is re-established, press the Android Auto icon to display the Android Auto interface.

Android Auto Full Screen

If **Android Auto** is available in FULL SCREEN mode, the display shown only the **Android Auto** page and the Mute and Volume icons are not available.
To exit **Android Auto** Full screen follow the next steps:



Select the "split-view" icon from Google Maps Full screen mode



Select the **Apps** icon



Select the Citroën icon.
This will display the home page, where all main controls become availabel again, Including the mute and volume icons.



To return to **Android Auto**, select **Android Auto** icon

Navigation

Navigation home page

(Depending on equipment)



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.



Press this button to display the shortcut menu for the various options.



Press this button to display the search page (address, name or point of interest (POI)).



Press the corresponding button to zoom in/out, or use two fingers on the screen.





Press this button to select the map orientation mode (North or Vehicle).

Main menu

Access



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Options Settings



Press this button to display the shortcut menu for the various options.

Choosing a new destination



Press this button to display the search page.

Click on the **Search or Address** field to enter an address or a name.
An alphanumeric keypad appears.
Enter the "**City**", "**Street**", '**Number**" and confirm by pressing the respective proposals displayed.

OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Choosing one of the last destinations



Press this button to display the search page.

Scroll down for the last desired destination and confirm by pressing on it.
or



Press Recent Destinations to obtain more destinations.

Select the desired destination and confirm by pressing on it.

OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Choosing one of My Places



Press this button to display the search page.



Press **My Places** to obtain private destinations.





Select **Home** or **Work** and confirm by pressing on it.

OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Choosing a point of interest (POI)



Press this button to display the search page.
Select the type of POI by pressing on it (e.g. Parking, Service station).

A list of the corresponding POI selected appears.
or



Press **Find Nearby POIs** to obtain POI around the vehicle position.
Select the POI to visit and confirm by pressing on it.

OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Main types of POI displayed on top of the screen:



Parking



Service station



Bank/Finance



Restaurant



Hotel



Pharmacy/Medical



Additional types of POI

Choosing a point on the map



Press this button to display the search page.

Explore the map by dragging it with fingers.
Zoom the desired area by pressing on "**+**" button.
Select the destination by pressing the map.

OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Settings

General Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **General** to access the various items to be set:

- **Language**: to choose the system display language from the list.
- **Factory Reset**: to return to factory default system.
- **Software Update**: to update the system by USB device and to see the current software/ hardware versions.

Tip
The selection of the display language in the touchscreen is independent from the instrument panel. Refer to the "Dashboard" section to change the instrument panel language.

Display Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **Display** to access the various items to be set:

- **Night Brightness**: to adjust the touch screen brightness using the **-** and **+** buttons or by moving the slider.

Tip
The brightness setting is only available when the vehicle's lamps are on in night mode.

Devices Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **Devices** to access the various items to be set:

- **Bluetooth**: to turn on/off the Bluetooth® visibility of the system.
- **Wi-Fi**: to activate/deactivate the Wi-Fi network of the system.
- **Scan for devices**: to select a mobile device to be connected (USB, Bluetooth®, Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto).
- **Device list**: to view the previously paired mobile device and connect or delete a device.

Audio Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **Audio** to access the various items 10 to be set:

- **Radio Settings:** to activate/deactivate the radio functions (e.g. Radio Data System (RDS), Alternative Frequency (AF), Traffic Announcement (TA)).
- **Balance/Fader**: to adjust the left/right (Balance) and front/rear (Fader) sound distribution.
- **Equaliser**: to adjust the treble, mid and bass sound levels and to activate/deactivate the loudness and speed dependent volume control functions.
- **Volume**: to adjust the volume according to each sound source.

Clock Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **Clock** to access the various items to be set:

- **Format**: to choose the date and time display format.
- **Date and Time**: to manually adjust the date and time.

Format

Select the Date Format: **DD/MM/YYYY**, **MM-DD-YY** or **YYYY-MM-DD**.
Select the Time Format: **24-hour** or **12-hour**.
Press **APPLY** to validate.

Date and Time

Adjust the Day, Month and Year using the Up and Down arrows.
Adjust the Hours and Minutes using the Up and Down arrows.
Press **APPLY** to validate.

Introduction

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of your vehicle, some others assist you while driving (driving or maneuvering aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle. You will find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in your vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook. These are also available in the general terms of sale of the vehicle, in the general terms of sale of connected services, or online on Brand website.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is identified by means of a unique chassis number. Further options, such as the vehicle's number plate, make it possible to trace data on the keeper or driver of the vehicle.
The data generated or processed by control units may therefore be personal, or be made personal under certain conditions. Depending on what vehicle data is available, conclusions may be drawn on information such as your driving behaviour, your location or the route you travel, or on your usage behaviour.

Operating data in the vehicle

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:

- Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.

Technical data of the vehicle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows: – Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tire pressures, battery charge status).

- Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes).
- System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
- Exact mileage or timestamp of recorded events (detection of internal malfunctions, activation of specific systems, etc.), allowing to locate them in time.
- Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
- Dynamic data recorded few seconds before and after specific driving events, such as an accident, a collisions or an activation of Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS): driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, engine speed, selected ratio on the gearbox, pedals pressure), and potential very low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle (only if ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system is activated).
- Cybersecurity events (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations).
- For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.

In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.

Maintenance and repair activities

When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary.

The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.
This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged.
The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.
Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system

Depending on its level of equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with an ADAS Data Recorder system that continuously process pictures and driving data, and record them inside your vehicle when specific Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS) are triggered (e.g. intelligent emergency braking assistance, interruption of semi-automatic lane changing, where applicable). This system aims to provide pieces of understanding for ADAS behavior, by collecting data every time ADAS are triggered.
The recorded data includes low-resolution images of the area in front of the vehicle and dynamic driving parameters (e.g., speed, acceleration, steering angle, brake pressure, turn signal status, accelerator pedal position), all sampled at one-second intervals before and after the event. The exact mileage and timestamp of the event are also stored. These data are displayed in a grayed-out format.
Resolution of stored pictures is too low to allow recognition of faces, to read licence plates, or to interpret panels on the roadside.
All this stored information can only be extracted from your vehicle near a CITROËN authorized workshop, via a special equipment connected by wire to the OBD port.
This can be done upon a request on your side for ADAS explanation, or in the context of a legal investigation concerning your vehicle.
This system only aims to provide explanatory context of ADAS activations. Only activation of specific ADAS systems can trigger it; this system is never directly triggered by detection of accidents or collisions without ADAS activation. In case where ADAS are deactivated, ADR system will not record any data.

Event Data Recorder (EDR) system

In addition, depending on country of sale and upon legal obligations, your vehicle may also be equipped with an Event Data Recorder system that records data in case of accident or collision, whatever the activation status of your ADAS systems. Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2022/545, the EDR system is a legal obligation in the Europe Market, and in other countries according to UN Regulation No 160; its purpose is to freeze driving data when accidents or collisions occur.
Contrary to the ADR system above described, pictures of the scene are never recorded by EDR system. Data can only be read through OBD port via a special equipment that law enforcement agencies may use to analyse the context of an accident involving your vehicle. Except in exceptional cases, repairers do not own this equipment.
For more information on the **Event Data Recording system**, please refer to the "**Safety**" section of this document.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and personalized settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialized at any time.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Seat and steering wheel position settings.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.
- Personalized settings such as the interior lighting.

You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.

- Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
- Entered destinations.
- Data regarding the use of online services.

This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time.
This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple®CarPlay®)

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematic system. Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematic system.
Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data.
How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used. The ability the change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

Online services - "Over-The- Air" connectivity

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone). The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

Proprietary services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided. Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorisation, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system, or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement. You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include legally required functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third-party services

If you use online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers, these services are subject to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the thirdparty services provided by the service provider in question.

Online services based on contractual agreements

Your vehicle may disclose and receive data by "Over-The-Air" connectivity to perform services explicitly requested by a service subscriber. During the subscription process, we check by different means the legitimacy of the requester -considered as vehicle's owner- to activate services on the vehicle.
For more details on those services, please ask the service subscriber to provide the relative Terms and Conditions he has accepted. He can find them from the Brand Mobile app or the

Brand website, after being connected with his **Stellantis** account.

Protecting measures against cyber-attacks

Depending on the model, your vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber attack attempts or unexpected events for cybersecurity point of view. This system, when fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.
When cybersecurity events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside your vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer's infrastructures by "Over-The-Air" connectivity. Those log files are analyzed by the Manufacturer's Security Operational Center (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronic components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.
The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cyber-security measures set up inside vehicles. It also plays a direct role in securing your vehicle's connectivity and ensures the proper functioning of the online services activated on your vehicle. Ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing are described within the **Stellantis** Privacy Policy for connected services (see below, chapter "European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis").

Applying legal obligations and respective requirements

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply.
Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independently of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

eCall - Emergency Call

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.
This function, where operational, is provided through the public emergency service of each country where you are driving. It doesn't matter where you bought your vehicle or where it is registered.
In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone-call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective Public Emergency number (call to '112' inside Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. your exact location, the time of the accident, your vehicle's identification number and direction of travel). This information is only transmitted from your vehicle in the event of a serious accident; it allows the public emergency services to assess and manage your situation. The public emergency services will act according to local legislation and their own operating procedures. Inside Europe, the 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.
According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018. The eCall system is only activated if your vehicle is involved in a serious accident. The rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when you are simply driving your vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering your car's position or monitoring your driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter

This function is provided for 15 years after the vehicle is firstly put into circulation.
In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance traveled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable). These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymous and aggregated way.
As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting the Customer Care Centre (contact

information available on the brand website available for your country).

SLI - Speed Limit Information

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market.
Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June 2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles.
As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance" system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, non-urban roads, and motorways/expressways/dual carriageways).
SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions don't permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle). The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over-The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematic unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle.
As required by the “GSR V2 Regulations”, this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle’s settings available from the central touch screen. This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over-The-Air data transmission of current vehicle’s position for accurate speed limit detection. Depending on the model of your vehicle, it may be possible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

Mileage disclosure to the Car-Pass association

(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)

This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28th November 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020).
It is provided lifetime, as long as the Car-Pass association requests the data.
It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by Belgian authorities to collect and control this data.
This mileage is collected over-the-air by **Stellantis** if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to the Car-Pass association, upon request by this organism.
For more information, please refer to the Car-Pass privacy policy (https://www.car-pass.be/en/privacy-policy).

Data use - product quality improvement

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by **STELLANTIS AUTO SAS** as a car maker, your Vehicle Data (as defined in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the localization of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products. Further information on this, and ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis

The Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles (“Privacy Policy”) applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are

authorised by a Customer to access and use the connected services.
This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016 and will help you understand better how we handle your information.
In this document, you will find some examples of how we process Personal Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy).
If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how your data are processed, please send your request to: dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com
This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services.

Declaration of conformity

This vehicle has radio equipments that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU.
The manufacturers of the radio equipments listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU.
No regional restriction applies on putting the equipment into service regarding Article 10 § 10 Directive 2014/53/EU.
The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://service.citroen.com/ACddb/index.html

RADIO RECEIVER SPS

Manufacturer:

Faurecia Clarion Electronics

Europe 40 avenue des Terroirs de France, 75012, Paris, France

	Operation frequency (MHz)	Max power
Blue-tooth	2402.0 - 2480.0	1.75 dBm

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM CRONY

Manufacturer:

Faurecia Clarion Electronics

Europe 40 avenue des Terroirs de France, 75012, Paris, France

	Operation frequency (MHz)	Max power
Blue-tooth	2402 - 2480	4.76 dBm
WIFI:	5745 - 5825	12.46 dBm

IMMOBILIZER

Manufacturer:

Aptiv Services Deutschland GmbH, Am Technologiepark 1 D–42119 Wuppertal, Germany

Operating Frequencies : 125 kHz
Max power : -18.97dBµA/m @10m

TELEMATIC BOX

Manufacturer:

MARELLI EUROPE S.p.A

Viale A. Borletti 61/63, Corbetta, Italy

Operation frequency	Max power
GSM 900	33 dBm
GSM 1800	30 dBm
WCDMA Band I	24 dBm
WCDMA Band VIII	24 dBm
LTE FDD Band 1	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 3	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 7	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 8	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 20	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 28	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 38	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 40	23 dBm

RADIO ANTENNA

Manufacturer:

Hirschmann Car Communication SaS

84 – 88 bd de la mission Marchand 92400 Courbevoie

France

Operation frequency (MHz)	Max power

76 – 108 MHz, 174–240 MHz , 150 – 281 kHz de 520 – 1620 kHz	NA*

* Not available at the time of printing

Index

A

Access 1, 29–37
Accessory sockets 50
Active Safety Brake 107
ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system 186
Air conditioning (Auto) 1, 46
Air conditioning (Manual) 1, 45
Airbags 1, 69
Alarm 1, 34
Anti-theft protection 1, 83
Average consumption 23

B

Back-up procedures 1, 30
Battery / Accessory battery 2, 156
Bodywork 143
Boot 1, 33
Boot fittings 1, 52
Boot light 53
Brake fluid 140

C

Central locking 1, 34
Changing a bulb 2, 152
Changing the battery 31
Charge level indicator (BEV) 21
Charging system (BEV) 2, 122
Charging the traction battery (BEV) 2, 131
Child seats 1, 71
Clothes hooks 51
Collision Risk Alert 107
Compatibility of fuels 1, 119
Configuration menu 1, 21
Connected Services 2, 178
Connectivity 2, 178
Coolant temperature indicator 18
Courtesy lights 1, 49
Cruise control 1, 103
Current consumption 23

D

Dashboard instruments 1, 10–28
Demisting/defrosting 1, 48
Dimensions (mm) 2, 170
Direction indicators 1, 55
Display screen 10
Distance recorders 20
Distraction detection 1, 109
Doors 1, 33
Drive selector (BEV) 1, 93
Driving and maneuvering aids - General recommendations 1, 98

E

e-Auto mode (MHEV) 1, 96
eCall - Emergency Call 188
Eco-driving 1, 8, 9
Electric drive system (BEV) 1, 6
Electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6) 1, 90
Electric windows 1, 36
Electronic stability 5 control (ESC) 1, 65
Energy economy mode 2, 136
Engine coolant 140
Engine oil 139
Engine oil level indicator 19
Engines 166
Engines and towed loads - BEV 2, 169
Engines and towed loads - ICE 2, 167
Engines and towed loads - MHEV 2, 168
Exterior lighting control stalk 1, 54

F

Front foglights and rear foglight 54
Front head restraints 1, 38
Front seats 1, 38
Fuses 2, 156

G

Gear shift indicator 1, 94
Gearbox (EAT6) 1, 88
Glove box 50
Guide-me-home lighting 57

H

Hazard warning lights 1, 62
Headlight beam height adjustment 1, 57
Heated seats 1, 39
Heated steering wheel 1, 43
Heated windshield 1, 48
Heating and Ventilation 1, 44
Hill start assist 1, 94
Hood 2, 137

Hooks 53
Horn 1, 63
Hybrid system (MHEV) 1, 2, 5, 121

I

Identification markings 2, 170
Illumination of lights 1, 56
Indicators 1, 18
Instruments and Control 1, 4
Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA) 107
Interior fittings 1, 50
ISOFIX mountings 1, 74

K

Key 1, 29

L

Labels 1, 7
Lane change flash 56
Lane departure warning 1, 111
Lane keeping assist 1, 111
LCD instrument panel 1, 10
Leather 144
Lighting and visibility 1, 54–61
Lighting dimmer 1, 23
Lighting system - General recommendations 1, 57
Lights, parking 56
List of warning and indicator lights 11
Load reduction mode 2, 137
Load space cover shelf 52
Locking the vehicle 29
Lost keys, remote control 30

M

Main controls 26, 27
Manual gearbox 1, 87
Manual parking brake 1, 85
Matrix instrument panel 1, 10
Mats 51
Media 2, 173, 175
Mirror Screen® 2, 180
Mirrors 1, 43

N

Navigation 2, 173, 182
Navigation on 10" Central Touchscreen - 10" Central Touchscreen 2, 171–184

O

OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter 188
Overspeed alert 1, 102
Overview 1, 4–7

P

Parking brake 1, 85, 142
Parking sensors 1, 116
Persistent warning light 11
Phone 2, 173, 176
Power indicator (MHEV or BEV) 20
Practical information 1, 119–144
Privacy Settings 1, 24
Progressive Hydraulic Cushions 1, 94

R

Radio 2, 173, 174
Rear head restraint 1, 39
Rear screen demisting/defrosting 1, 48
Rear wiper 60
Refueling 1, 119
Reinitialize the remote control 32
Remote control function 29
Remotely operable additional functions (BEV) 1, 27
Reversing camera 1, 117
Road signs recognition 1, 100
Roof bars 2, 136

S

Safety 1, 62–80
Seat belts 1, 67
Service indicator 18
Settings 2, 183
SLI - Speed Limit Information 189
Smartphone Station 1, 24
Snow chains 2, 135
Spare wheel 2, 148
Speed limiter 1, 102
Starting/Switching off the engine 1, 83
Steering wheel adjustment 1, 43
Steering-mounted controls 2, 25, 172
Stop & Start (ICE) 1, 95
Sun visor 50

T

Technical data 2, 166–170
Temperature preconditioning (BEV) 1, 49
Temporary puncture repair kit 2, 146
Textile 144
Tire pressure 148
Tire under-inflation detection 1, 97
Tool kit 2, 145
Touch screen 1, 26
Towing device 2, 135
Towing the vehicle 2, 162
Trip computer 1, 22
Trip reset 23
Triple flash function 56

U

Unfolding / Folding the key 29
Unlocking the vehicle 29
Unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key 30
USB sockets 50

V

Vehicle data recording and privacy 2, 185–192
Voice commands 2, 172

W

Warning and indicator lights 1, 11
Warning triangle 2, 145
Weights and towed loads 166
Welcome lighting 57
Windshield washer 60
Windshield washer fluid 140
Wiper control stalk 1, 59
Wireless smartphone charger 50

Recycled materials/End-of-Life Vehicles
Automobiles CITROËN declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) and The End-of-Life Vehicles (Producer Responsibility) (Amendment) Regulation 2010 No.1094, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.
No part of this document may be reproduced or translated without written permission from Automobiles CITROËN.

Automobiles CITROËN,
société par actions simplifiée au capital social de 159.000.000 euros dont le siège social est situé 43 rue Jean-Pierre TIMBAUD, 78300 POISSY, FRANCE et immatriculée auprès du RCS de Versailles sous le numéro 642 050 199.
www.citroen.com

Printed in the EU
10/2025



QUARTZ ENGINE OIL | MOPAR

Driving innovation for tomorrow.

For over 50 years, **TotalEnergies and Stellantis have shared a common vision of performance, innovation, and mobility for the future.**

This long-standing partnership is built on close technical collaboration, from product design to after-sales service across official networks. By combining their expertise, the two companies have developed cutting-edge lubrication technologies tailored to the evolving needs of Citroën powertrains.

The co-branded **Quartz Mopar** and **Quartz EV3R Mopar** ranges reflect this shared expertise. Specifically designed and **approved by Citroën**, they include **high-performance engine oils** covering every Citroën powertrain. Each formulation helps keep engines clean, reduce wear, and support fuel efficiency, ensuring smooth operation mile after mile, even under the most demanding conditions.

We're taking innovation further with **Quartz EV3R Mopar,** which introduces the **3R approach (Reduce, Reuse, Regenerate)** using regenerated base oils and a recyclable bottle, while delivering the same performance as standard Quartz oils, with a lower impact compared to our conventional products.

Your authorized Citroën repairer will recommend the right oil for your model and service schedule. Available and **recommended within Citroën authorized after-sales networks,** Quartz Mopar offers confidence, durability, and proven technology backed by decades of partnership.

CITROËN PREFERS TotalEnergies

CITROËN | TotalEnergies

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

CC3ACBO2505en-2